

## MỤC LỤC

<b>PHẦN 1: CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ</b> .....	<b>3</b>
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: NGỮ ÂM .....	3
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: THÌ .....	9
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: CÂU PHỨC .....	14
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ .....	17
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: SO SÁNH .....	23
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: CÂU GIÁN TIẾP .....	28
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: USED TO VÀ BE/ GET USED TO .....	36
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: CÂU ƯỚC .....	39
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG .....	42
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: CÁCH SỬ DỤNG CỦA SUGGEST .....	48
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: CẤU TRÚC CỦA TÍNH TỪ .....	50
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: TỪ CHỈ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG .....	53
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN .....	58
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: MẠO TỪ .....	64
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 15: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ .....	67
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 16: CÁCH SỬ DỤNG CỦA DESPITE VÀ ALTHOUGH.....	74
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17: DẠNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ .....	78
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18: SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ .....	83
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19: CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI .....	87
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20: MỐI LIÊN QUAN GIỮA QKĐ VÀ HTHT .....	90
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 21: CẤU TẠO CỦA TỪ .....	94
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 22: TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ .....	100
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 23: LIÊN TỪ .....	103
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 24: GIỚI TỪ .....	112
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 25: TÌM LỖI SAI .....	120
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 26: TỪ ĐỒNG NGHĨA, TRÁI NGHĨA .....	123
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 27: CÂU CÓ CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP .....	127
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 28: KĨ NĂNG ĐỌC.....	131
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 29: CÂU ĐỒNG NGHĨA.....	143
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 30: VIẾT LẠI CÂU VỚI CÁC TỪ CHO SẴN .....	148
<b>PHẦN 2: ĐÁP ÁN</b> .....	<b>154</b>

# CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: NGỮ ÂM (PHONETICS)

## A. PHÁT ÂM

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Cách đọc “s/ es”

/s/	/ɪz/	/z/
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ khi từ có tận cùng là các phụ âm vô thanh: /θ/, /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/ (thường có tận cùng là các chữ: <b>gh, th, ph, k, f, t</b>) (<b>ghét thời phong kiến phương tây</b>)</li> <li>➤ Ex: laughs, units, stops, works, months</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ khi từ có tận cùng là các âm /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /ʒ/ (thường có tận cùng là các chữ: <b>s, ce, ge, ss, ch, x, sh, z</b>) (<b>sáu sung sướng chạy xe SH rồi</b>)</li> <li>➤ Ex: kisses, fixes, prizes, washes, watches, races</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ khi từ có tận cùng là các nguyên âm và các phụ âm hữu thanh còn lại</li> <li>➤ Ex: drives, reads, goes, tries, learns, dreams</li> </ul>

#### 2. Cách đọc “ed”

/ɪd/	/t/	/d/
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ khi từ có tận cùng là các phụ âm: /t/, /d/</li> <li>➤ Ex: wanted, needed</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ khi từ có tận cùng là các âm: /θ/, /f/, /k/, /p/, /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /ʒ/ (thường có tận cùng là các chữ: <b>gh, th, ph, k, p, s, ce, ge, ss, ch, x, sh</b>)</li> <li>➤ Ex: stopped, looked, missed, fixed, washed, watched, laughed, changed, practiced</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ khi từ có tận cùng là các nguyên âm và các phụ âm hữu thanh còn lại</li> <li>➤ Ex: played, opened, tried, smiled, loved</li> </ul>

**Lưu ý:** Đuôi “ed” trong các động từ sau khi sử dụng như tính từ sẽ được phát âm là /ɪd/ bất luận “ed” sau âm gì: aged, blessed, crooked, dogged, learned, naked, ragged, wicked.

#### 3. Nguyên âm - Vowels (u, e, o, a, i)

##### a. Nguyên âm ngắn - Short vowels

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| - /ə/: <u>ago</u> , <u>moth<u>e</u>r</u> , <u>togeth<u>e</u>r</u>    | - /ɪ/: <u>h<u>i</u>t</u> , <u>b<u>i</u>t</u> , <u>s<u>i</u>t</u>                        |
| - /ʌ/: <u>st<u>u</u>dy</u> , <u>sh<u>u</u>t</u> , <u>m<u>u</u>st</u> | - /ɒ/: <u>g<u>o</u>t j<u>o</u>b</u> , <u>h<u>o</u>spital</u>                            |
| - /ʊ/: <u>put</u> , <u>sh<u>o</u>uld</u> , <u>fo<u>o</u>t</u>        | - /e/: <u>b<u>e</u>d</u> , <u>s<u>e</u>nd</u> , <u>t<u>e</u>nt</u> , <u>s<u>e</u>nd</u> |
| - /æ/: <u>cat</u> , <u>ch<u>a</u>t</u> , <u>m<u>a</u>n</u>           |   |

##### b. Nguyên âm dài - Long vowels

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| - /i:/: <u>m<u>e</u>e</u> t, <u>b<u>e</u>a</u> t, <u>h<u>e</u>a</u> t        | - /u:/: <u>sch<u>o</u>ol</u> , <u>f<u>o</u>od</u> , <u>m<u>o</u>on</u> |
| - /ɑ:/: <u>f<u>a</u>th<u>e</u>r</u> , <u>st<u>a</u>r</u> , <u>c<u>a</u>r</u> | - /ɔ:/: <u>s<u>po</u>rt</u> , <u>m<u>o</u>re</u> , <u>st<u>o</u>re</u> |

##### c. Nguyên âm đôi- Diphthongs

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| - /aɪ/: <u>b<u>u</u>y</u> , <u>sk<u>y</u></u> , <u>h<u>i</u></u> , <u>sh<u>y</u></u> | - /ɔɪ/: <u>b<u>o</u>y</u> , <u>en<u>jo</u>y</u> , <u>t<u>o</u>y</u>  |
| - /eɪ/: <u>d<u>a</u>y</u> , <u>ob<u>e</u>y</u> , <u>st<u>a</u>y</u>                  | - /oʊ/: <u>n<u>o</u></u> , <u>g<u>o</u></u> , <u>s<u>o</u></u>       |
| - /aʊ/: <u>n<u>o</u>w</u> , <u>s<u>o</u>und</u> , <u>c<u>o</u>w</u>                  | - /ʊə/: <u>p<u>o</u>or</u> , <u>s<u>u</u>re</u> , <u>t<u>o</u>ur</u> |

- /eə/: air, care, share

- /ɪə/: near, tear, cheer

#### 4. Phụ âm - Consonants

- /b/: bag, baby

- /p/: pupil, pay, stop

- /d/: dog, daddy, dead

- /k/: kiss, key

- /m/: mother, map, come

- /j/: yes, yellow

- /n/: many, none, news

- /s/: see, summer

- /l/: love, lucky, travel

- /z/: zoo, visit

- /r/: river, restaurant

- /h/: hat, honey

- /t/: tea, teach

- /dʒ/: village, jam, generous

- /g/: get, game, go

- /θ/: thin, thick, something, birth

- /f/: fall, laugh, fiction

- /ð/: mother, with, this

- /v/: visit, van

- /ʃ/: she, sugar

- /w/: wet, why

- /ʒ/: vision

- /tʃ/: children, chicken, watch

- /ŋ/: thank, sing

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1: Chọn từ có phát âm khác với các từ còn lại

- |                       |                   |                        |                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>skims</u>    | B. <u>works</u>   | C. <u>sits</u>         | D. <u>laughs</u>   |
| 2. A. <u>fixes</u>    | B. <u>pushes</u>  | C. <u>misses</u>       | D. <u>goes</u>     |
| 3. A. <u>cries</u>    | B. <u>buzzes</u>  | C. <u>studies</u>      | D. <u>supplies</u> |
| 4. A. <u>holds</u>    | B. <u>notes</u>   | C. <u>replies</u>      | D. <u>sings</u>    |
| 5. A. <u>keeps</u>    | B. <u>gives</u>   | C. <u>cleans</u>       | D. <u>prepares</u> |
| 6. A. <u>runs</u>     | B. <u>fills</u>   | C. <u>draws</u>        | D. <u>catches</u>  |
| 7. A. <u>drops</u>    | B. <u>kicks</u>   | C. <u>sees</u>         | D. <u>hopes</u>    |
| 8. A. <u>lamps</u>    | B. <u>knocks</u>  | C. <u>changes</u>      | D. <u>wants</u>    |
| 9. A. <u>drinks</u>   | B. <u>rides</u>   | C. <u>travels</u>      | D. <u>leaves</u>   |
| 10. A. <u>calls</u>   | B. <u>glasses</u> | C. <u>smiles</u>       | D. <u>learns</u>   |
| 11. A. <u>schools</u> | B. <u>yards</u>   | C. <u>labs</u>         | D. <u>seats</u>    |
| 12. A. <u>knives</u>  | B. <u>trees</u>   | C. <u>classes</u>      | D. <u>agrees</u>   |
| 13. A. <u>buses</u>   | B. <u>horses</u>  | C. <u>causes</u>       | D. <u>ties</u>     |
| 14. A. <u>garages</u> | B. <u>boats</u>   | C. <u>bikes</u>        | D. <u>roofs</u>    |
| 15. A. <u>ships</u>   | B. <u>roads</u>   | C. <u>streets</u>      | D. <u>speaks</u>   |
| 16. A. <u>cats</u>    | B. <u>tapes</u>   | C. <u>rides</u>        | D. <u>cooks</u>    |
| 17. A. <u>walks</u>   | B. <u>begins</u>  | C. <u>helps</u>        | D. <u>cuts</u>     |
| 18. A. <u>shoots</u>  | B. <u>grounds</u> | C. <u>concentrates</u> | D. <u>forests</u>  |
| 19. A. <u>helps</u>   | B. <u>laughs</u>  | C. <u>cooks</u>        | D. <u>finds</u>    |
| 20. A. <u>hours</u>   | B. <u>fathers</u> | C. <u>dreams</u>       | D. <u>thinks</u>   |

### BT 2: Chọn từ có phát âm khác với các từ còn lại

- |                         |                    |                   |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>talked</u>     | B. <u>fished</u>   | C. <u>arrived</u> | D. <u>stepped</u>  |
| 2. A. <u>wished</u>     | B. <u>wrapped</u>  | C. <u>laughed</u> | D. <u>turned</u>   |
| 3. A. <u>considered</u> | B. <u>rescued</u>  | C. <u>pulled</u>  | D. <u>roughed</u>  |
| 4. A. <u>produced</u>   | B. <u>arranged</u> | C. <u>checked</u> | D. <u>supplied</u> |

- |                           |                     |                     |                        |
|---------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 5. A. <u>caused</u>       | B. <u>examined</u>  | C. <u>operated</u>  | D. <u>advised</u>      |
| 6. A. <u>discovered</u>   | B. <u>destroyed</u> | C. <u>developed</u> | D. <u>opened</u>       |
| 7. A. <u>repaired</u>     | B. <u>invented</u>  | C. <u>wounded</u>   | D. <u>succeeded</u>    |
| 8. A. <u>watched</u>      | B. <u>parked</u>    | C. <u>broadened</u> | D. <u>encouraged</u>   |
| 9. A. <u>delivered</u>    | B. <u>organized</u> | C. <u>replaced</u>  | D. <u>obeyed</u>       |
| 10. A. <u>painted</u>     | B. <u>provided</u>  | C. <u>protected</u> | D. <u>equipped</u>     |
| 11. A. <u>tested</u>      | B. <u>marked</u>    | C. <u>presented</u> | D. <u>founded</u>      |
| 12. A. <u>used</u>        | B. <u>finished</u>  | C. <u>married</u>   | D. <u>rained</u>       |
| 13. A. <u>allowed</u>     | B. <u>dressed</u>   | C. <u>flashed</u>   | D. <u>mixed</u>        |
| 14. A. <u>switched</u>    | B. <u>stayed</u>    | C. <u>believed</u>  | D. <u>cleared</u>      |
| 15. A. <u>recommended</u> | B. <u>waited</u>    | C. <u>handed</u>    | D. <u>designed</u>     |
| 16. A. <u>filled</u>      | B. <u>cleaned</u>   | C. <u>ploughed</u>  | D. <u>watched</u>      |
| 17. A. <u>visited</u>     | B. <u>decided</u>   | C. <u>engaged</u>   | D. <u>disappointed</u> |
| 18. A. <u>kissed</u>      | B. <u>stopped</u>   | C. <u>laughed</u>   | D. <u>closed</u>       |
| 19. A. <u>reformed</u>    | B. <u>appointed</u> | C. <u>stayed</u>    | D. <u>installed</u>    |
| 20. A. <u>fitted</u>      | B. <u>educated</u>  | C. <u>locked</u>    | D. <u>intended</u>     |

**BT 3: Chọn từ có phát âm khác với các từ còn lại**

- |                        |                     |                       |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>head</u>      | B. <u>please</u>    | C. <u>heavy</u>       | D. <u>measure</u>   |
| 2. A. <u>note</u>      | B. <u>gloves</u>    | C. <u>some</u>        | D. <u>other</u>     |
| 3. A. <u>now</u>       | B. <u>how</u>       | C. <u>blow</u>        | D. <u>amount</u>    |
| 4. A. <u>dear</u>      | B. <u>year</u>      | C. <u>wear</u>        | D. <u>disappear</u> |
| 5. A. <u>hate</u>      | B. <u>pan</u>       | C. <u>carrot</u>      | D. <u>matter</u>    |
| 6. A. <u>improved</u>  | B. <u>returned</u>  | C. <u>arrived</u>     | D. <u>stopped</u>   |
| 7. A. <u>nervous</u>   | B. <u>scout</u>     | C. <u>household</u>   | D. <u>mouse</u>     |
| 8. A. <u>favorite</u>  | B. <u>find</u>      | C. <u>outside</u>     | D. <u>library</u>   |
| 9. A. <u>last</u>      | B. <u>taste</u>     | C. <u>fast</u>        | D. <u>task</u>      |
| 10. A. <u>future</u>   | B. <u>summer</u>    | C. <u>number</u>      | D. <u>drummer</u>   |
| 11. A. <u>time</u>     | B. <u>kind</u>      | C. <u>bid</u>         | D. <u>nice</u>      |
| 12. A. <u>hard</u>     | B. <u>carry</u>     | C. <u>card</u>        | D. <u>yard</u>      |
| 13. A. <u>my</u>       | B. <u>baby</u>      | C. <u>spy</u>         | D. <u>cry</u>       |
| 14. A. <u>well</u>     | B. <u>get</u>       | C. <u>send</u>        | D. <u>pretty</u>    |
| 15. A. <u>weather</u>  | B. <u>ready</u>     | C. <u>mean</u>        | D. <u>head</u>      |
| 16. A. <u>break</u>    | B. <u>mean</u>      | C. <u>please</u>      | D. <u>meat</u>      |
| 17. A. <u>lucky</u>    | B. <u>punish</u>    | C. <u>pull</u>        | D. <u>hungry</u>    |
| 18. A. <u>planet</u>   | B. <u>character</u> | C. <u>happy</u>       | D. <u>classmate</u> |
| 19. A. <u>letter</u>   | B. <u>twelve</u>    | C. <u>person</u>      | D. <u>sentence</u>  |
| 20. A. <u>humor</u>    | B. <u>music</u>     | C. <u>cucumber</u>    | D. <u>sun</u>       |
| 21. A. <u>favorite</u> | B. <u>name</u>      | C. <u>happy</u>       | D. <u>danger</u>    |
| 22. A. <u>end</u>      | B. <u>help</u>      | C. <u>set</u>         | D. <u>before</u>    |
| 23. A. <u>photo</u>    | B. <u>hold</u>      | C. <u>fork</u>        | D. <u>slow</u>      |
| 24. A. <u>train</u>    | B. <u>wait</u>      | C. <u>afraid</u>      | D. <u>chair</u>     |
| 25. A. <u>habit</u>    | B. <u>paper</u>     | C. <u>table</u>       | D. <u>grade</u>     |
| 26. A. <u>meaning</u>  | B. <u>heart</u>     | C. <u>please</u>      | D. <u>speak</u>     |
| 27. A. <u>light</u>    | B. <u>kind</u>      | C. <u>intelligent</u> | D. <u>underline</u> |

28. A. <u>come</u>	B. <u>more</u>	C. <u>money</u>	D. <u>somebody</u>
29. A. <u>comb</u>	B. <u>climb</u>	C. <u>bomb</u>	D. <u>baby</u>
30. A. <u>nation</u>	B. <u>national</u>	C. <u>nationality</u>	D. <u>international</u>
31. A. <u>bank</u>	B. <u>paper</u>	C. <u>explain</u>	D. <u>same</u>
32. A. <u>fun</u>	B. <u>sun</u>	C. <u>supermarket</u>	D. <u>lunch</u>
33. A. <u>different</u>	B. <u>literature</u>	C. <u>tidy</u>	D. <u>finger</u>
34. A. <u>cat</u>	B. <u>fat</u>	C. <u>father</u>	D. <u>apple</u>
35. A. <u>daunt</u>	B. <u>astronaut</u>	C. <u>vaulting</u>	D. <u> aunt</u>
36. A. <u>clear</u>	B. <u>treasure</u>	C. <u>spread</u>	D. <u>dread</u>
37. A. <u>about</u>	B. <u>shout</u>	C. <u>wounded</u>	D. <u>count</u>
38. A. <u>none</u>	B. <u>dozen</u>	C. <u>youngster</u>	D. <u>home</u>
39. A. <u>crucial</u>	B. <u>partial</u>	C. <u>material</u>	D. <u>financial</u>
40. A. <u>major</u>	B. <u>native</u>	C. <u>sailor</u>	D. <u>applicant</u>

## B. PHÁT ÂM

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Đa số động từ có 2 âm tiết, trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai.

Ex: relax /rɪ'læks/      produce /prə'du:s/      include /ɪn'klu:d/      discover /dɪ'skʌvər/  
begin /bɪ'gɪn/      become /bɪ'kʌm/      forget /fər'get/      enjoy /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/

#### 2. Đa số danh từ và tính từ có 2 âm tiết có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

Ex: action /'æksjən/      paper /'peɪpər/      teacher /'ti:tʃər/  
rainy /'reɪni/      active /'æktɪv/      happy (adj) /'hæpi/

#### 3. Với từ có 3 âm tiết trở lên, trọng âm sẽ rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3 tính từ cuối lên.

Ex: economy /ɪ'kɑ:nəmi/      industry /'ɪndəstri/      intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/  
specialize /'speʃəlaɪz/      geography /dʒi'ɑ:grəfi/      cinema /'sɪnəmə/

#### 4. Trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết trước đó nếu các từ tận cùng bằng các đuôi - ic, - ish, - ical, - sion, - tion, - ance, - ence, - idle, - ious, - iar, - ience, - id, - eous, - ian, - ity.

Ex: nation /'neɪʃn/      entrance /'entrəns/      historic /hɪ'stɔ:ri:k/  
foolish /'fu:lɪʃ/      famous /'feɪməs      celebrity /sə'lebrəti/

#### 5. Trọng âm rơi vào chính âm tiết đó nếu các từ có hậu tố: - ee, - eer, - ese, - ique, - esque, - oo, - oor.

Ex: agree /ə'gri:/      volunteer /ˌvɔ:lən'tɪr/      picturesque /ˌpɪktʃə'resk/  
unique /ju'ni:k/      kangaroo /ˌkæŋgə'ru:/      Vietnamese /ˌvjetnə'mi:z/

#### 6. Các từ có hậu tố: - ment, - ship, - ness, - er/ or, - hood, - ing, - en, - ful, - able, - ous, - less thì trọng âm chính của từ không thay đổi.

Ex: poison /'pɔɪzn/ => poisonous /'pɔɪzənəs/      happy /'hæpi/ => happiness /'hæpɪnəs/  
rely /rɪ'laɪ/ => reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/      relation /rɪ'leɪʃn/ => relationship /rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/

#### 7. Các từ tận cùng - graphy, - ate, - logy, - cy, - ity, - phy, - al thì trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3 từ dưới lên.

Ex: economical /ˌi:kə'nɑ:mɪkl/      geography /dʒi'ɑ:grəfi/  
technology /tek'nɑ:lədʒi/      democracy /dɪ'mɑ:krəsi/

#### 8. Hầu như các tiền tố không nhận trọng âm.

Ex: dis'cover /dɪ'skʌvər/      re'ply /rɪ'plai/      des'troy /dɪ'strɔɪ/

#### 9. Các từ 2 âm tiết bắt đầu bằng "a" thì trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2

Ex: a'bed /ə'bed/      a'gain /ə'geɪn/      a'chieve /ə'tʃi:v/

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1: Chọn từ có trọng âm khác với các từ còn lại

- |                 |             |             |             |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. harrow    | B. arrive   | C. repair   | D. announce |
| 2. A. reply     | B. appeal   | C. offer    | D. support  |
| 3. A. answer    | B. allow    | C. agree    | D. deny     |
| 4. A. compare   | B. approve  | C. enter    | D. pollute  |
| 5. A. mother    | B. relax    | C. father   | D. garden   |
| 6. A. decide    | B. combine  | C. apply    | D. happen   |
| 7. A. promise   | B. picture  | C. listen   | D. accept   |
| 8. A. attract   | B. verbal   | C. signal   | D. social   |
| 9. A. open      | B. provide  | C. complete | D. prefer   |
| 10. A. become   | B. promise  | C. suggest  | D. disorder |
| 11. A. surgeon  | B. surplus  | C. shampoo  | D. enter    |
| 12. A. create   | B. inform   | C. surface  | D. surprise |
| 13. A. enough   | B. reply    | C. complete | D. person   |
| 14. A. involved | B. obstacle | C. prepare  | D. supposed |
| 15. A. money    | B. army     | C. affair   | D. people   |

- |                |              |            |            |
|----------------|--------------|------------|------------|
| 16. A. study   | B. knowledge | C. precise | D. message |
| 17. A. contain | B. express   | C. carbon  | D. obey    |
| 18. A. impress | B. favor     | C. occur   | D. police  |
| 19. A. regret  | B. selfish   | C. purpose | D. preface |
| 20. A. writer  | B. teacher   | C. builder | D. career  |

**BT 2: Chọn từ có trọng âm khác với các từ còn lại**

- |                    |                 |                |                  |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. obvious      | B. probably     | C. finally     | D. approaching   |
| 2. A. maximum      | B. decision     | C. requirement | D. admission     |
| 3. A. energy       | B. consequently | C. application | D. difficulty    |
| 4. A. considerable | B. information  | C. librarian   | D. technician    |
| 5. A. interviewer  | B. preparation  | C. economics   | D. education     |
| 6. A. certificate  | B. necessary    | C. economy     | D. geography     |
| 7. A. mathematics  | B. engineering  | C. scientific  | D. laboratory    |
| 8. A. university   | B. application  | C. technology  | D. entertainment |
| 9. A. library      | B. entertain    | C. understand  | D. referee       |
| 10. A. requirement | B. condition    | C. example     | D. previous      |
| 11. A. memory      | B. exactly      | C. radio       | D. management    |
| 12. A. powerful    | B. interesting  | C. exciting    | D. difficult     |
| 13. A. conference  | B. lecturer     | C. reference   | D. researcher    |
| 14. A. computer    | B. establish    | C. business    | D. remember      |
| 15. A. typical     | B. favorite     | C. division    | D. organize      |
| 16. A. mechanic    | B. chemistry    | C. cinema      | D. finally       |
| 17. A. advantage   | B. musical      | C. politics    | D. apartment     |
| 18. A. expression  | B. easily       | C. depression  | D. disruptive    |

- |                      |                   |                   |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 19. A. eleven        | B. history        | C. nursery        | D. different      |
| 20. A. physical      | B. achievement    | C. government     | D. national       |
| 21. A. parallel      | B. dependent      | C. primary        | D. educate        |
| 22. A. general       | B. applicant      | C. usually        | D. October        |
| 23. A. economic      | B. experience     | C. entertainment  | D. introduction   |
| 24. A. qualification | B. disappointedly | C. responsibility | D. recommendation |
| 25. A. addition      | B. suitable       | C. shortcoming    | D. honestly       |
| 26. A. traditional   | B. majority       | C. appropriate    | D. electrician    |
| 27. A. imprisonment  | B. behave         | C. dissatisfied   | D. picturesque    |
| 28. A. afternoon     | B. necessary      | C. compliment     | D. serious        |
| 29. A. accountant    | B. professor      | C. develop        | D. typical        |
| 30. A. invitation    | B. computation    | C. industry       | D. understand     |

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: THÌ  
(TENSES)**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

<b>Tenses (Thì)</b>	<b>Forms (Công thức)</b>	<b>Signals (Dấu hiệu)</b>
1. Hiện tại đơn	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>Động từ tobe:</u> (+) S + is/ am/ are + O. (-) S + is/ am/ are + not + O. (?) Is/ am/ are + S + O?</li> <li><u>Động từ thường:</u> (+) S + V-inf/ s/ es + O. (-) S + do/ does + not + V-inf + O. (?) Do/ does + S + V-inf + O?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Các trạng từ chỉ tần suất: Always, usually, often, sometimes, hardly, never</li> <li>Every (day/ week/ night/ month...)</li> <li>In the morning/ afternoon/ evening</li> </ul>
2. Hiện tại tiếp diễn	(+) S + is/ am/ are + V-ing + O. (-) S + is/ am/ are + not + V-ing + O. (?) Is/ am/ are + S + V-ing + O?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Các trạng từ chỉ thời gian: Now, right now, currently, at present, today, this week</li> <li>Các câu cảm thán: Hurry up! Look!</li> </ul>
3. Hiện tại hoàn thành	(+) S + has/ have + Ved/ V3 + O. (-) S + has/ have + not + Ved/ V3 + O. (?) Has/ have + S + Ved/ V3 + O?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Just/ ever/ never/ already <b>(have/ has + just/ ever/ never/ already + Ved/P2)</b></li> <li>Since + mốc thời gian</li> <li><b>Since + QKĐ, HTHT</b></li> <li>For + khoảng thời gian</li> <li>So far, not .....yet, up to now, lately, before (cuối câu)</li> <li>Twice, three times, many times</li> </ul>
4. Quá khứ đơn	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>Động từ tobe:</u> (+) S + was/ were + O. (-) S + was/ were + not + O. (?) Was/ were + S + O?</li> <li><u>Động từ thường:</u> (+) S + Ved/ V2 + O. (-) S + did not + V-inf + O. (?) Did + S + V-inf + O?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Các trạng từ chỉ thời gian trong quá khứ: yesterday, ago, last (week/ month/ year/...)</li> <li>In + năm quá khứ</li> <li>When + QKĐ</li> </ul>
5. Quá khứ tiếp diễn	(+) S + was/ were + V-ing + O. (-) S + was/ were + not + V-ing + O. (?) Was/ were + S + V-ing + O?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>By + giờ + trạng từ trong quá khứ</li> <li><b>While + QKTD, QKTD</b> (diễn tả 2 hd xảy ra song song cùng 1 lúc)</li> <li><b>When + QKĐ, QKTD/</b></li> <li><b>While + QTTD, QKĐ</b> (diễn tả 2 hd xảy ra, hd xảy ra trước chia QKTD, hd xảy ra sau chia QKĐ)</li> </ul>
6. Quá khứ hoàn	(+) S + had + Ved/ V3 + O. (-) S + had + not + Ved/ V3 + O. (?) Had + S + Ved/ V3 + O?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>by + trạng từ của quá khứ</li> <li>S + told/ said + that + QKHT</li> <li>Các liên từ nối: When/ Before/ By the</li> </ul>

thành		time/ After/ As soon as: - <b>Before + QKĐ, QKHT</b> - <b>When/ By the time + QKĐ, QKHT</b> - <b>After/ As soon as + QKHT, QKĐ</b>
7. Tương lai đơn	(+) S + will + V-inf + O. (-) S + will not + V-inf + O. (?) Will + S + V-inf + O?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Diễn tả một hành động thường quyết định ngay tại thời điểm nói</li> <li>• Các trạng từ chỉ thời gian trong tương lai: tomorrow, next (week/ month ...), soon, in the future</li> <li>• Các cụm từ: I hope/ think/ expect/ ...</li> <li>• Các từ: Probably/ perhaps</li> <li>• <b>When/ before/ after + HTĐ, TLĐ</b></li> </ul>
8. Tương lai tiếp diễn	(+) S + will be + Ving + O (-) S + won't be + Ving + O (?) Will + S + be + Ving + O?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At this time/ giờ + trạng từ của tương lai</li> </ul>

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Chia các động từ sau ở thì Hiện tại đơn và Hiện tại tiếp diễn

1. What \_\_\_\_\_ they (do) \_\_\_\_\_ in the winter?
2. Now I (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking while Hoa (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to music.
3. At the moment, Nam and his friends (go) \_\_\_\_\_ shopping at the mall.
4. On Friday, I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
5. He (like) \_\_\_\_\_ apples, but he (not like) \_\_\_\_\_ bananas.
6. Tom (be) \_\_\_\_\_ my friend. He (play) \_\_\_\_\_ sports every day.
7. He (teach) \_\_\_\_\_ English in a big school in town.
8. We usually (read) \_\_\_\_\_ books, (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to music or (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ TV.
9. Look! They (run) \_\_\_\_\_ together.
10. Keep silent! I (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio.

### BT 2. Chia các động từ sau ở thì Quá khứ đơn và Hiện tại hoàn thành

1. I (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ him last Monday.
2. Up to the present, we (write) \_\_\_\_\_ almost every lesson in the book.
3. How many times \_\_\_\_\_ you (see) \_\_\_\_\_ him since he went to Edinburgh?
4. Mary (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ her hat and she (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for it until now.
5. I (read) \_\_\_\_\_ the novel written by Jack London several times before.
6. He (write) \_\_\_\_\_ a book since last year.
7. Mr Green. (teach) \_\_\_\_\_ English in this school since he (graduate) \_\_\_\_\_ from the university in 1986.
8. My father (not smoke) \_\_\_\_\_ for 5 years.
9. How long \_\_\_\_\_ Bob and Mary (be) \_\_\_\_\_ married?
10. She (win) \_\_\_\_\_ the gold medal in 1986.

### BT 3. Chia các động từ sau ở thì Quá khứ đơn, Quá khứ tiếp diễn và Quá khứ hoàn thành

1. When the police (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_, the car (go) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. While we (do) \_\_\_\_\_ a sight-seeing tour, our friends (lie) \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach.
3. They (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ everything by the time they (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ at the party.
4. While Tom (play) \_\_\_\_\_ the piano, his mother (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the washing-up.
5. I (go) \_\_\_\_\_ after they (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ their work.
6. The light went out while I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.
7. He (do) \_\_\_\_\_ nothing before he (see) \_\_\_\_\_ me.
8. When they (get) \_\_\_\_\_ the station, the train (leave) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The house (catch) \_\_\_\_\_ fire while they were sleeping.
10. While Tom was reading, Amely (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ a documentary on TV.
11. The burglar (open) \_\_\_\_\_ the safe when he (hear) \_\_\_\_\_ footsteps. He immediately (put) \_\_\_\_\_ out his torch and (crawl) \_\_\_\_\_ under the bed.
12. Last night I (drop) \_\_\_\_\_ a plate when I (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the washing-up. Fortunately it (not/break) \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Mary and I (dance) \_\_\_\_\_ the house when the telephone rang.
14. I (open) \_\_\_\_\_ the letter when the wind (blow) \_\_\_\_\_ it out of my hand.
15. The boy fell and hurt himself while he (ride) \_\_\_\_\_ a bicycle.

**BT 4. Chia các động từ sau ở thì Hiện tại đơn, Tương lai đơn và Tương lai tiếp diễn**

1. When you (go) \_\_\_\_\_ into the office, Mr John (sit) \_\_\_\_\_ at the front desk.
2. Our English teacher (explain) \_\_\_\_\_ that lesson to us tomorrow.
3. We (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for you when you (get) \_\_\_\_\_ back tomorrow.
4. What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) \_\_\_\_\_ at 7:00 pm next Sunday?  
I (practice) \_\_\_\_\_ my English lesson then.
5. When I see Mr Pike tomorrow, I (remind) \_\_\_\_\_ him of that.
6. When you (come) \_\_\_\_\_ next Monday, I (work) \_\_\_\_\_ at my desk.
7. He (work) \_\_\_\_\_ on the report at this time tomorrow.
8. Please wait here until you (see) \_\_\_\_\_ her.
9. The Browns (do) \_\_\_\_\_ their housework when you (come) \_\_\_\_\_ next Sunday.
10. Don't leave until you (see) \_\_\_\_\_ her.

**BT 5. Chọn đáp án đúng nhất**

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ to New York three times this year.  
A. was                      B. had been                      C. is                      D. has been
2. The second World War \_\_\_\_\_ in 1939.  
A. started                      B. starts                      C. has started                      D. start
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as you have finished your work.  
A. will go                      B. go                      C. went                      D. have gone
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ the book by the time you come tonight.

- A. will be finishing      B. have finished      C. will have finished      D. finished
5. Television \_\_\_\_\_ very popular since 1950s.  
A. has been      B. was      C. had been      D. is
6. Peter \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment, so he can't answer the phone.  
A. has worked      B. is working      C. worked      D. works
7. Don't go anywhere until I \_\_\_\_\_ back.  
A. came      B. have come      C. come      D. will come
8. The King just \_\_\_\_\_ here yesterday.  
A. had come      B. comes      C. has come      D. came
9. It is the largest ship I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. had seen      B. saw      C. have ever seen      D. see
10. At 8 o'clock this evening, my friends and I \_\_\_\_\_ a famous film in the cinema  
A. will watch      B. watched      C. will be watching      D. have watched
11. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ an hour ago.  
A. phoned      B. has phoned      C. phones      D. was phoning
12. This is the house that Jack \_\_\_\_\_ three years ago.  
A. was building      B. builds      C. had built      D. built
13. Don't make noise. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ with her friends.  
A. talked      B. talks      C. is talking      D. was talking
14. She \_\_\_\_\_ the piano since she was ten years old.  
A. played      B. has played      C. plays      D. had played
15. Up to now, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of information about her.  
A. learnt      B. would learn      C. learn      D. have learnt
16. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ in London for 15 years.  
A. lives      B. was living      C. is living      D. has lived
17. I'm hungry now. I \_\_\_\_\_ anything today.  
A. didn't eat      B. haven't eaten      C. don't eat      D. won't eat
18. When we arrived home last night, everybody \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. has already slept      B. had already slept  
C. was already sleeping      D. already sleeping
19. Mark Twain \_\_\_\_\_ loved his wife before he met her.  
A. is      B. was      C. has      D. had
20. How \_\_\_\_\_ since we left school?  
A. will you      B. have you been      C. are you      D. are you being
21. They \_\_\_\_\_ a presentation at this time tomorrow morning.  
A. are making      B. are going to make      C. will be making      D. will making
22. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ an hour ago.  
A. don't see      B. hadn't seen      C. didn't see      D. haven't seen
23. What will Nam do when he \_\_\_\_\_ school next year?  
A. could finish      B. will finish      C. has finished      D. finishes
24. I \_\_\_\_\_ in Hanoi before I moved to HCM City.  
A. had been living      B. had lived  
C. have lived      D. have been living
25. When I was a boy, I \_\_\_\_\_ tea to coffee.  
A. preferred      B. was preferring      C. have preferred      D. prefer
26. He went back to work in his country after he \_\_\_\_\_ his course on Advanced Engineering in London.  
A. was finishing      B. finishes      C. has finished      D. had finished
27. He \_\_\_\_\_ up his mind yet.  
A. hasn't made      B. didn't make      C. wasn't making      D. wasn't make
28. I \_\_\_\_\_ TV while my father \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper last night.  
A. am watching / was reading      B. was watching / was reading  
C. am watching / is reading      D. was watching / is reading
29. Tom and Mary \_\_\_\_\_ for Vietnam tomorrow.

- A. have left                      B. leaving                      C. leave                      D. will leave
30. The science lessons in this class \_\_\_\_\_ difficult today.  
A. are                      B. be                      C. was                      D. is
31. - Peter, please help me do the washing up. - Sorry, Mum. I \_\_\_\_\_ TV.  
A. had watched                      B. am watching                      C. watched                      D. watch
32. He has \_\_\_\_\_ in giving up smoking.  
A. succeeds                      B. succeed                      C. succeeded                      D. succeeding
33. While I \_\_\_\_\_ TV last night, a mouse ran across the room.  
A. was watching                      B. am watching                      C. watched                      D. watch
34. It rained yesterday after it \_\_\_\_\_ dry for months.  
A. is                      B. will be                      C. had been                      D. has been
35. I'm going on holiday. This time next week I \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach in the sea.  
A. will lie                      B. am lying                      C. will be lying                      D. lie
36. We must start now. The next train \_\_\_\_\_ at 2:15 p.m.  
A. will leave                      B. has leave                      C. left                      D. leaves
37. The motorway \_\_\_\_\_ in 1986.  
A. finished                      B. has finished                      C. finishes                      D. was finished
38. What were you \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:00 last night?  
A. do                      B. doing                      C. done                      D. did
39. She'll be a millionaire by the time she \_\_\_\_\_ forty.  
A. was                      B. will be                      C. is                      D. is going to be
40. People \_\_\_\_\_ English and French in Canada.  
A. are speaking                      B. had spoken                      C. have spoken                      D. speak

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: CÂU PHỨC (COMPOUND SENTENCES)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Định nghĩa:

- Câu phức là câu bao gồm 1 mệnh đề độc lập và ít nhất 1 mệnh đề phụ thuộc liên kết với nhau. Hai mệnh đề thường được nối với nhau bởi dấy phẩy hoặc các liên từ phụ thuộc.

- Ví dụ:

❖ He always takes time to play with his daughter **even though** he is extremely busy.

(mệnh đề độc lập)

(mệnh đề phụ thuộc)

❖ **Even though** he is extremely busy, he always takes time to play with his daughter.

(mệnh đề phụ thuộc)

(mệnh đề độc lập)

- Lưu ý:

- Mệnh đề đi liền với liên từ trong câu phức chính là mệnh đề phụ thuộc.
- Nếu mệnh đề phụ thuộc nằm phía trước mệnh đề độc lập thì giữa 2 mệnh đề phải có dấu phẩy, còn lại thì không.

#### 2. Một số liên từ phụ thuộc phổ biến

After/ As soon as (sau khi)	Although/ Though/ Even though (mặc dù)	As if/ As though (như thể là)	Since/ Because/ As (bởi vì)	In order to/ so that (để mà)
Before (trước đây)	Even if (dù là/ mặc dù)	If (nếu)	Once/ When /As (khi/ một khi)	Whereas/ While (trong khi đó)
As long as (miễn là)	In case (trong trường hợp)	Unless (nếu không)	Until (cho đến khi)	

#### 3. Các loại mệnh đề phụ thuộc thường gặp

Mệnh đề phụ thuộc	Ví dụ
<b>1. Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ lí do:</b> - Trả lời cho câu hỏi tại sao - Thường bắt đầu với các liên từ: because, since, as, ...	I did it <u>because there was no one else to do it.</u>
<b>2. Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ thời gian:</b> - Nói về thời gian hành động diễn ra khi nào - Thường được bắt đầu với các liên từ: when, while, before, after, as soon as, ...	<u>As soon as you are ready,</u> we shall go.
<b>3. Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ sự nhượng bộ:</b> - Diễn tả kết quả bất ngờ, ngoài sức mong đợi - Thường được bắt đầu với các liên từ: although, even though, though, even if, ...	<u>Although it rained,</u> he went out all the same.
<b>4. Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ mục đích:</b> - Nói về mục đích của hành động trong mệnh đề độc lập - Thường được bắt đầu với các liên từ: so that/ in order that, ...	He was speaking very quietly <u>so that it was difficult to hear what he said.</u>



9. When I got home, my father was mowing the lawn \_\_\_\_\_ my mother was watering the flower.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ I don't get on well with Mary, I really admire her intelligence and beauty.

**BT 3. Điền liên từ thích hợp và chỗ trống để hoàn thành những câu sau**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ it's pouring with rain, we are going for a walk in the park.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ she hands in the assignment before Tuesday, she will get very bad mark.
3. He decided to trust Jim this time \_\_\_\_\_ he was not an honest man.
4. Jennifer decided to break up with Peter \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't spend much time with her.
5. Danny bought a new car \_\_\_\_\_ his old car was still in good condition.
6. I will be in great trouble \_\_\_\_\_ my mother knows my final test scores.
7. Janice will have finished the report \_\_\_\_\_ the time you receive the letter.
8. The concert will be cancelled \_\_\_\_\_ no more tickets are sold.
9. Children are not allowed to enter this place \_\_\_\_\_ they are accompanied by adults.
10. You should bring your coats \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature falls at night.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ my sister doesn't like eating salad, she eats it regularly to keep fit.
12. I won't come to Jim's party \_\_\_\_\_ he invites me.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ you tell me the truth, I can't help you.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ the firemen arrived, the fire had already been put out by the local residents.
15. You can leave early \_\_\_\_\_ you want to.

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Định nghĩa:

- Cụm động từ là sự kết hợp giữa 1 động từ và 1 tiểu từ.
- Tiểu từ có thể là 1 trạng từ hoặc 1 giới từ hoặc cả hai (ví dụ: back, on, through, off, up,...)
- Khi thêm tiểu từ vào sau động từ, cụm động từ thường có ý nghĩa khác hẳn so với động từ ban đầu.
- Ví dụ: You can look up any new words in your dictionary.

#### 2. Ý nghĩa phổ biến của 1 số tiểu từ trong cụm động từ

Tiểu từ	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
up	Diễn đạt vị trí hướng lên trên hoặc ý kết thúc, hoàn thành tất cả	We <b>ate</b> all the food <b>up</b> .
down	Diễn đạt vị trí hướng xuống dưới hoặc hành động có xu thế giảm/ chặn lại	We'll have to <b>cut down</b> the expenses
on	Diễn đạt ý ở trên, dựa trên	You should <b>put on</b> formal clothes in a meeting.
in	Diễn đạt ý ở trong, xu hướng đi vào trong	Make sure to leave the office by 5:00 pm or you will be <b>locked in</b> .
out	Diễn đạt vị trí phía ngoài hoặc ý hành động đến tận cuối/ cạn kiệt	I couldn't <b>figure him out</b> .
off	Diễn đạt ý rời đi chỗ khác hoặc thay đổi trạng thái	I've <b>sent off</b> the letter you wrote to the newspaper.
for	Diễn đạt mục đích hướng tới của hành động	He often <b>asks</b> his parents <b>for</b> money.
with	Diễn tả ý có người hoặc vật cùng tham gia trong hành động	That skirt <b>goes</b> really well <b>with</b> your red coat.
through	Diễn tả ý lân lượt cái này sang cái kia hoặc từ đầu đến cuối	If you <b>look through</b> something, you read it quickly and not very carefully.
back	Diễn tả ý trở lại/ quay lại	Please <b>send</b> the jacket <b>back</b> if it is the wrong size.
away	Diễn tả trạng thái dời đi hoặc tạo ra khoảng cách	<b>Put away</b> your toys, Jack!
around	Diễn tả hành động mang tính giải trí, không rõ mục đích hoặc không cần quá tập trung	I hate the way he <b>lies around</b> all day watching TV.

#### 3. Một số cụm động từ đi liền với nhau

##### a. Cụm động từ kết hợp với 1 tiểu từ

Get up (thức dậy)	Find out (tìm hiểu thông tin)	Look through (đọc)
Pass down (truyền lại)	Live on (sống nhờ bằng)	Come back (trở lại)
Pass away (chết)	Warm up (khởi động)	Keep up (tiếp tục) = go on
Turn down (từ chối)	Set up (sắp đặt, chuẩn bị)	Hold on (chờ đợi)

Turn up (xuất hiện)	Show off (khoe khoang)	Count on = rely on (tin tưởng)
Deal with (giải quyết)	Grow up (lớn lên)	Work out (tìm ra cách giải quyết)
Give up (từ bỏ) = quit	Carry out (thực hiện)	Drop by ( ghé qua)
Break down (đổ vỡ, hỏng)	Bring out (phát hành)	Bring up (nuôi dưỡng)
Take up (bắt đầu hoạt động)	Agree on st (đồng ý việc gì) Agree with sb (đồng ý với ai)	Believe in (tin tưởng)
Take off (cất cánh/ cởi)	Use up (cạn kiệt)	Look for (tìm kiếm)
Take over (đảm nhận)	Look after = take care of (chăm sóc)	Set out/ off (khởi hành)
Take after (giống ai)	Watch out/ over (cẩn thận)	Run into (tình cờ)

#### b. Cụm động từ kết hợp với 2 tiểu từ

Keep up with = catch up with (bắt kịp)	Face up to (đối mặt với)	Look forward to+ Ving (mong đợi)
Put up with (chịu đựng)	Look up to (kính trọng)	Look back on (nhớ lại)
Come up with (nảy ra ý tưởng)	Look down on (coi thường)	Go in for (tham gia)
Come down with (mắc bệnh)	Cut down on (cắt giảm)	Get on with (hòa hợp với)
Run out of (cạn kiệt)	Go through with (kiên trì, bền bỉ)	Stay away from (tránh xa)
Get rid of (loại bỏ)= give up	Go along with (đồng ý với)	Make up for (đền bù)

#### 4. Một số cụm động từ được ngăn cách bởi tân ngữ

Pay sb back (trả nợ ai)	Take st off (cởi cái gì)	See sb off (tạm biệt ai)
Tell sb off (la rầy ai đó)	Pick sb up (đón ai)	Put st on (mặc cái gì vào)
Drop sb off (thả ai xuống xe)	Make st up (bịa chuyện)	Put st/ sb out (đưa ai/ cái gì ra ngoài)
Turn sb/ st down (từ chối ai/ cái gì)	Put st away (cất đi)	Cut st into (cắt vật gì thành)
Get sb down (làm ai thất vọng)	Put st down (ghi chép lại)	Take st/ sb back to (đem trả lại)

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Khoanh vào đáp án đúng

1. They have turned (**down/ up**) Jim's application for the job.
2. You may have to deal (**with/ about**) many problems in the workplace.
3. Small birds mainly live (**on/ off**) insects.
4. When does the plane take (**off/ up**)?
5. Why did you decide to take (**on/ up**) skiing?
6. Remember to warm (**up/ down**) carefully before you play sports.
7. There's no need to dress (**up/ down**). It is just an informal party.
8. Have you worked (**out / in**) the solution yet?
9. Oops, I think we're run out (**of/ on**) petrol.
10. Jim seems not to get (**on/ off**) well with his classmates.
11. My husband has decided to set (**up/ down**) a business on his own.
12. Do you think James will find (**out / up**) the truth?
13. Does Jim have many friends to count (**on/ off**) in difficult time?
14. Yesterday, my uncle dropped (**to/ by**) my house to the surprise of everyone.
15. Were you brought (**up/ in**) by your grandparents?
16. Who does Jim take (**after/ in**)?
17. I am waiting (**after/ for**) the result of the test.
18. They haven't agreed (**on/ with**) what make of car they would buy.
19. "Who did you run (**out of/ into**) yesterday?" - "It was my old teacher."
20. If we don't conserve the natural gas, it will soon be used (**up/ to**)?
21. After years of being badly treated, James doesn't believe (**about/ in**) the good things in life any more.
22. Why did you stay (**up/ on**) so late last night?
23. When Mr. Brown went on a business trip , Mrs. Smith took (**over/ off**) his work.
24. Jim promised to pick (**on/ up**) me from the airport.
25. Peter took (**off/ up**) his rain coat before he came in.
26. Many of my friends came to the airport to see (**over/ off**) me.
27. The teacher told us to put (**away/ down**) interesting details of the presentation.
28. It is the shared mind that keeps (**up/ together**) us.
29. My mother told me to (**put/ get**) on warm clothes before I went out.
30. Jim really (**got/ put**) me down when he forgot my birthday.
31. My father never (**tells/ drops**) me off but my mother is always shouting at me.
32. I couldn't believe she (**turned/ got**) down my invitation for the second time.
33. My mother often lets me (**look/ take**) after my younger brother.
34. "Why did she (**break/ stay**) up with you?" - "She said I didn't care much about her."

35. Please (**drop/ tell**) me off in front of the theater .
36. We've been (**saving/ looking**) up to travel to New York this summer.
37. Have you (**take/ put**) out clean towels for the guests?
38. I remember (**paying/ looking**) Jim back but he kept asking me for his money.
39. Jim's poor test results (**got/ looked**) his parents down.
40. My grandmother (**died/ passed**) away before I was born.

**BT 2. Điền một động từ thích hợp để hoàn thành các câu dưới đây**

1. Sometimes I \_\_\_\_\_ back on my childhood and realize how happy I was as a kid.
2. James is quite easy going. He can \_\_\_\_\_ on well with many types of people.
3. Peter has been absent from school for 2 weeks due to his illness. It may be difficult for him to \_\_\_\_\_ up with his classmates.
4. Did you watch the film last night? Do you know how the villain \_\_\_\_\_ back on the hero?
5. Mr/Smith decided to \_\_\_\_\_ up smoking because the doctor warned him of getting lung cancer.
6. He could \_\_\_\_\_ with all kinds of people because it was part of his job as a receptionist.
7. Jim was sad because Jane \_\_\_\_\_ down his invitation to the prom.
8. It is important to \_\_\_\_\_ down our sugar consumption every day.
9. It's time you have to \_\_\_\_\_ up to these problems on your own.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ forward to hearing from you soon.

**BT 3. Hoàn thành các câu sau đây bằng những cụm động từ cho sẵn**

cut down on	deal with	hold on	take up	count on
put up with	turn down	come down with	tell off	bring out

1. This singer will \_\_\_\_\_ a new album this year.
2. Peter is very reliable. You can \_\_\_\_\_ him.
3. You should \_\_\_\_\_ your essay \_\_\_\_\_ 500 words.
4. Jim is depressed as he has been \_\_\_\_\_ by five companies so far.
5. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ such disturbing noise any more.
6. My mother is always \_\_\_\_\_ me.
7. Mr.Smith has \_\_\_\_\_ golf.
8. Are you tired of \_\_\_\_\_ complained from your customer?
9. How are you now? I heard that you \_\_\_\_\_ flu last week.
10. \_\_\_\_\_! I think we've got lost. This isn't the right road.

**BT 4. Hoàn thành câu bằng cách điền từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống**

1. Peter always look \_\_\_\_\_ to his senior colleagues.
2. Mary is going \_\_\_\_\_ a singing competition.
3. Nothing can make \_\_\_\_\_ the loss of my cat.

4. Jim didn't work yesterday because he came \_\_\_\_\_ flu.
5. My mother always reminds me to stay \_\_\_\_\_ bad people.
6. As a child, I used to wait \_\_\_\_\_ the present from Santa Clause.
7. I can't put \_\_\_\_\_ his selfishness any more.
8. They argue a lot. They seem to never get \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
9. Last year we went \_\_\_\_\_ an operation.
10. Last week we got \_\_\_\_\_ all the old furniture and bought new one.

**BT 5. Hoàn thành các câu bằng cách điền tiểu từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống**

1. We will set \_\_\_\_\_ for Tokyo in the next few hours.
2. Everyone says that Jim takes \_\_\_\_\_ his father but I think he is more like his mother.
3. Who will take \_\_\_\_\_ your position when you are on parental leave?
4. There are four of us so Peter cuts the cake \_\_\_\_\_ four pieces.
5. I am going to buy a new bike , so I put my old one \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Remember to put the trash \_\_\_\_\_ before the garbage truck comes.
7. You must take \_\_\_\_\_ your hat before you come into a temple.
8. I hate the way my manager shuts me \_\_\_\_\_ when she disagrees with me.
9. What are you looking \_\_\_\_\_? My car keys.
10. Watch \_\_\_\_\_ for the dog. Everyone says that it is a fierce dog.

**BT 6: Hoàn thành câu bằng 1 cụm động từ thích hợp**

pay back	get down	believe in	save up	tell off
pull out	see off	agree with	watch out	make up

1. I have seen a lot of people burst into tears when they \_\_\_\_\_ their friends and family \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ me that you didn't try hard enough?
3. Has your teacher ever \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? No, she hasn't. She is a nice teacher.
4. Last week, I borrowed Tom \$50 to buy a book but I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
5. My boyfriend walked towards me and then he \_\_\_\_\_ a small gift.
6. I never \_\_\_\_\_ in ghosts but my brother always scared of them.
7. \_\_\_\_\_! There is a car coming.
8. I hate the way Peter tell lies and \_\_\_\_\_ stories to chat people.
9. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ enough to buy a new car.
10. I promised my mother not to \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_, so I tried to best to get high scores.

**BT 7. Tìm lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng**

1. We have already worked up a new way of doing it.  
A                      B                      C                      D
2. I can't keep up to all the changes in technology nowadays.  
A                      B                      C                      D
3. Have you ever considered getting rid your bad habits?  
A                      B                      C                      D
4. The teacher asked us to see through the textbook before she continued.  
A                      B                      C                      D
5. Mary and Peter broke them up after two months dating.  
A                      B                      C                      D
6. You should clear your room up before mom comes back.  
A                      B                      C                      D
7. I was happy that I ran my old teacher into yesterday.  
A    B                      C                      D
8. Mary is always showing her jewelry off.  
A    B                      C                      D
9. Both of us agreed with Jane's opinion about our plan.  
A                      B                      C                      D
10. Last year a research on the consequences of water pollution was carried on.  
A                      B                      C                      D

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ: SO SÁNH (COMPARISONS)

### A. LÝ THUYẾT

#### I. SO SÁNH BẰNG

##### 1. Khẳng định:

**S + tobe + as + adj + as + noun/ pronoun.**

**S + V + as + adv + as + noun/ pronoun.**

Ex:- Lan is as young as Hoa.

- Mai dances as beautifully as Hue.

##### 2. Phủ định:

**S + tobe + not + as/ so + adj + as + noun/ pronoun.**

**S + V + not + as/ so + adv + as + noun/ pronoun.**

Ex: Lan isn't as/ so young as Hoa.

Mai doesn't dances as/ so beautifully as Hue.

##### 3. Cấu trúc “the same as”: giống nhau

**S + tobe/ V + the same + (noun) + as + noun/ pronoun.**

##### 4. Cấu trúc không giống nhau “different from”

**S1+ tobe + different from + S2**

Ex: This book is the same as that one. / She has the same height as my sister.

#### II. SO SÁNH HƠN

##### 1. Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn

**S + tobe + adj-er + than + noun/ pronoun.**

**S + V + adv-er ( hard, fast,late, early) + than + noun/ pronoun.**

Ex: My house is smaller than her house.

She runs faster than me.

##### ❖ Lưu ý về cách thêm “er” đối với tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn:

+ Đối với tính từ/ trạng từ kết thúc bằng chữ “e” thì ta chỉ thêm “r”.

Ex: large → larger, late- later

+ Đối với tính từ/ trạng từ kết thúc bằng 1 nguyên âm (**u, e, o, a, i**) + 1 phụ âm thì ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm cuối + er

Ex: big → bigger, hot → hotter.

+ Đối với các tính từ kết thúc bằng “y” thì ta chuyển “y” thành “i” rồi thêm “er”.

Ex: noisy → noisier, friendly → friendlier.

+ Đối với tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng kết thúc bằng “**y, ow, er, et, le**” thì ta vẫn chia các từ này theo công thức so sánh hơn đối với tính từ ngắn.

Ex: narrow → narrower, happy → happier, quiet → quieter, clever → cleverer.

+ Các trạng từ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho so sánh hơn: **much, far, a bit/ a little, a lot.**

Ex: This chair is much smaller than that chair.

##### 2. Tính từ dài/ trạng từ thêm đuôi -ly

**S + tobe + more + adj + than + noun/ pronoun.**

**S + V + more/less + adv + than + noun/ pronoun.**

Ex: Jenny is more beautiful than me.

Tom talks more slowly than me.

#### III. SO SÁNH NHẤT

##### 1. Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn

**S + tobe + the + adj-est + noun/ pronoun .**

**S + V + the + adv-est + noun/ pronoun.**

Ex: This is the longest river in the world.

I jump the highest in my class.

❖ **Lưu ý về cách thêm “est” đối với tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn:**

- Tương tự như cách thêm “er”
- Để nhấn mạnh ý trong so sánh nhất, ta thêm “**by far**” vào sau hình thức so sánh hoặc dùng “**second/ third**” để nhấn mạnh sự nổi bật trong nhóm.

Ví dụ: - Karachi in Pakistan is the second largest city in the world in population.

- China is by far the most populated country in the world.

## 2. Tính từ/ trạng từ dài

**S + tobe + the most + adj + noun/ pronoun.**

**S + V + the most + adv + noun/ pronoun.**

Ex: Jenny is the most beautiful in my class.

Tom eats the most slowly in my family.

**Bảng tính từ/ trạng từ so sánh bất quy tắc:**

Tính từ/ trạng từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh nhất	Nghĩa
<b>Good/ well</b>	Better	The best	Tốt
<b>Bad/ badly</b>	Worse	The worst	Tệ
<b>Little</b>	Less	The least	Ít
<b>Much/ many</b>	More	The most	Nhiều
<b>Far</b>	Farther Further	The farthest The furthest	Xa Thêm nữa/ hơn nữa
<b>Old</b>	Older Elder	The oldest The eldest	Già Anh (chị) trong nhà

## IV. SO SÁNH KÉP

### 1. Cùng 1 tính từ: (càng ...ngày càng...)

#### a. Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn:

**S + tobe + adj-er + and + adj-er.**

**S + V + adv-er + and + adv-er.**

Ex: It is getting hotter and hotter.

His voice became weaker and weaker.

#### b. Tính từ/ trạng từ dài:

**S + tobe + more and more + adj.**

**S + V + more and more + adv.**

Ex: The lessons are getting more and more difficult.

The storm became more and more violent.

### 2. Hai tính từ khác nhau: (càng ...thì càng...)

**The + comparative + S + tobe/ V, the + comparative + S + tobe/V.**

Ex: The taller she gets, the thinner she is.

The more beautiful she is, the more attractive she gets.

The more intelligent she is, the lazier she becomes.

**Lưu ý:**

**Trong câu so sánh kép, nếu túc từ là một danh từ thì ta đặt danh từ ấy ngay sau tính từ so sánh.**

Ex: The more English vocabulary we know, the better we speak.

## B. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Cho dạng đúng của tính từ trong ngoặc

1. This exercise is (easy) \_\_\_\_\_ as that one.
2. He is (fat) \_\_\_\_\_ as you.
3. English is not (difficult) \_\_\_\_\_ as Chinese.
4. Was the party (fun) \_\_\_\_\_ as she expected?
5. Apple is (popular) \_\_\_\_\_ as Samsung.
6. The weather today is not (hot) \_\_\_\_\_ as it was yesterday.
7. Pham Nhat Vuong's career is (successful) \_\_\_\_\_ as many billionaires' career in the world.
8. Saigon used to be (developed) \_\_\_\_\_ as several countries in Asia.
9. My mom's dishes are (delicious) \_\_\_\_\_ as food served at restaurants.
10. Many people believe that Quang Hai is not (talented) \_\_\_\_\_ as many famous football players in the world.
11. Urban sprawl has happened (fast) \_\_\_\_\_ than ever before.
12. Ha Noi is much (populous) \_\_\_\_\_ than my hometown.
13. The city center is (densely) \_\_\_\_\_ populated than the suburbs.
14. You can count on Peter. He is (reliable) \_\_\_\_\_ than he appears to be.
15. This singer performs (well) \_\_\_\_\_ than she used to be three years ago.
16. This year we travel (far) \_\_\_\_\_ than we did last year.
17. I noticed that today my daughter looked (happy) \_\_\_\_\_ than usual.
18. As people get old, they try to maintain a (healthy) \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle than when they are young.
19. Traveling by bus is much (slow) \_\_\_\_\_ than traveling by bullet train.
20. Jim didn't feel well today, so he performed (badly) \_\_\_\_\_.
21. Josh is the second (intelligent) \_\_\_\_\_ student in his class.
22. Hanoi is amongst (polluted) \_\_\_\_\_ city in the world.
23. By far, this is (stunning) \_\_\_\_\_ scene I have ever.
24. He seems to be (tall) \_\_\_\_\_ amongst the children at his age.
25. We had a great holiday. It was one of (enjoyable) \_\_\_\_\_ holiday we've ever had.
26. It was an awful day. It was (bad) \_\_\_\_\_ day of my life.
27. The United States is very large, but Canada is (large) \_\_\_\_\_.
28. She is by far (rich) \_\_\_\_\_ woman in Vietnam.
29. I think that he is one of (boring) \_\_\_\_\_ people in the world.
30. I have had the (happy) \_\_\_\_\_ days in my life.

**BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. In Vietnam, it is normally \_\_\_\_\_ in the South than in the North.  
A. hot                                      B. hotter                                      C. hottest                                      D. hotter
2. My younger brother is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. more and more naughty                                      B. much and much naughty

- C. most and most naughty  
D. naughtier and naughtier
3. Jane is not \_\_\_\_\_ as her brother.  
A. more intelligent      B. so intelligent      C. intelligenter      D. intelligent
4. Can Tho is \_\_\_\_\_ from Sai Gon than Bien Hoa is.  
A. farther      B. further      C. far      D. farer
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ we start, the sooner we will be back.  
A. early      B. earliest      C. earlier      D. early
6. The harder this student works, \_\_\_\_\_ he becomes.  
A. the most understanding      B. the more understanding  
C. more understanding      D. understandinger
7. \_\_\_\_\_ people use the Internet every day.  
A. Many and many      B. Most and most      C. More and more      D. The more
8. She is the \_\_\_\_\_ daughter in her family.  
A. older      B. more old      C. eldest      D. oldest
9. She speaks English as \_\_\_\_\_ as you.  
A. clear      B. clearly      C. clearness      D. clearer
10. It gets \_\_\_\_\_ when the winter is coming.  
A. cold and cold      B. the coldest and coldest  
C. colder and colder      D. more and more cold
11. The \_\_\_\_\_ he is, the more miserable he gets.  
A. richer      B. more rich      C. rich      D. the richer
12. He drives as \_\_\_\_\_ his father does.  
A. careful as      B. more carefully      C. the most careful      D. carefully as
13. I did \_\_\_\_\_ than I expected on the test, but not really badly.  
A. worst      B. the worst      C. more bad      D. worse
14. Of the two sisters, Linda is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. so beautiful as      B. more beautiful      C. the most beautiful      D. beautiful
15. Women's employment rate is getting \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. high and high      B. higher and the highest  
C. high and higher      D. higher and highe
16. Hotels have developed \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants.  
A. as rapidly as      B. so rapidly that      C. as rapid as      D. as rapid than
17. She is \_\_\_\_\_ student in my class.  
A. most hard-working      B. more hard-working  
C. the most hard-working      D. as hard-working
18. Health care in the country is said to become \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good and good      B. best and best  
C. the better and the better      D. better and better
19. \_\_\_\_\_ the man gets, \_\_\_\_\_ he becomes.  
A. The more old/ the more weak      B. The older/ the weaker  
C. The older/ the weakest      D. older/ weaker
20. Of all athletes, Alex is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the less qualified      B. the less and less qualified  
C. the more and more qualified      D. the least qualified

**BT 3. Viết lại các câu sau sao cho nghĩa không thay đổi**

1. No one in my class is taller than Peter.

=> Peter.....

2. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

=> No mountain .....

3. This is the first time I have ever met such a pretty girl.

=> She .....

4. This computer works better than that one.

=> That  
computer.....

5. The black car is cheaper than the red car.

=> The red car.....

6. He works much. He feels tired.

=> The  
more.....

7. The apartment is big. The rent is high.

=> The bigger.....

8. We set off soon. We will arrive soon.

=> The sooner .....

9. The joke is good. The laughter is loud.

=> The better.....

10. She gets fat. She feels tired.

=> The fatter .....

**BT 4. Khoanh lỗi sai và sửa lại cho đúng**

1. This girl is the most beautiful of the two daughters that he has.

A B C D

2. Frank plays tennis worse of all the players.

A B C D

3. The most he tries, the more he succeeds.

A B C D

4. She can pronounce English words more correct than she could last term.

A B C D

5. In this class, the students are talking more loudlier than the teacher.

A B C D

6. This summer is hotter and winder than last summer.

A B C D

7. You should practise English oftener to be a better speaker of English.

A B C D

8. Ha Anh can now speak English more well than the last time I met him.

A B C D

9. She is much more intelligent than Nam does.

A B C D

10. The more rich he is, the more miserable he gets.

A B C D

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: CÂU GIÁN TIẾP (REPORTED SPEECH)

### A. LÝ THUYẾT

#### I. Một số thay đổi cơ bản khi chuyển sang câu gián tiếp

Khi muốn chuyển 1 câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp, ta cần áp dụng những quy tắc sau:

##### 1. Thay đổi thì của động từ

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
Hiện tại đơn	⇒ Quá khứ đơn
Hiện tại tiếp diễn	⇒ Quá khứ tiếp diễn
Hiện tại hoàn thành	⇒ Quá khứ hoàn thành
Quá khứ đơn	⇒ Quá khứ hoàn thành
Quá khứ tiếp diễn	⇒ Quá khứ tiếp diễn/ Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn
Quá khứ hoàn thành	⇒ Quá khứ hoàn thành
Tương lai đơn: will/ shall	⇒ Tương lai trong quá khứ: would/ should
Tương lai gần: be going to	⇒ Was/ were going to
Can	⇒ Could
May	⇒ Might
Must	⇒ Had to

##### 2. Thay đổi các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
Ago	⇒ Before
Yesterday	⇒ The day before/ The previous day
Last week/ month...	⇒ The week/ month...before/ The previous week/ month...
Now	⇒ Then
Today	⇒ That day
Tomorrow	⇒ The next day/ The following day
Next week/ month...	⇒ The next week/ month.../ The following week/ month...
This	⇒ That
These	⇒ Those
Here	⇒ There

##### 3. Đổi ngôi các đại từ

Chủ ngữ	Tân ngữ	Tính từ sở hữu	Đại từ sở hữu	Đại từ phản thân
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	it	its	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself/ yourselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves

+ I => đổi theo chủ ngữ của động từ phát biểu

+ You => đổi theo tân ngữ của động từ phát biểu

+ We => đổi thành "they"

+ Các ngôi khác => giữ nguyên

## II. Cách chuyển câu trực tiếp sang gián tiếp

### 1. Câu trực tiếp ở dạng câu kể/ tường thuật:

S	+	said (to sb) told (sb) asked (sb)	+	that	+	clause (lùi thì)
---	---	---	---	------	---	---------------------

Ex1: “I’m going to visit Japan next month”, she said.

→ She said that she was going to visit Japan the following month.

Ex2: “He picked me up yesterday”, Lan said to me.

→ Lan said to me that he had picked her up the day before.

**Lưu ý:** Một số trường hợp đặc biệt không thay đổi thì sau “that”:

❖ Khi động từ phát biểu ở thì hiện tại đơn

Ex: Michael says: “I am a doctor.”

→ Michael says (that) he is a doctor.

❖ Nếu câu trực tiếp diễn tả 1 sự thật hiển nhiên

Ex: Teacher said: “Water boils at 100 degree.”

→ Teacher said water boils at 100 degree.

### 2. Câu trực tiếp ở dạng câu hỏi

#### a. Câu hỏi Yes/ No question

S	+	asked wondered wanted to know	+	sb	+	if whether	+	clause (lùi thì)
---	---	-------------------------------------	---	----	---	---------------	---	---------------------

Ex1: “Do you love English?”, the teacher asked.

→ The teacher asked me if/ whether I loved English.

Ex2: “Have you done your homework yet?”, they asked.

→ They asked me if/ whether I had done my homework yet.

**Lưu ý:** Nếu trong câu trực tiếp có từ “or not” thì câu gián tiếp bắt buộc phải dùng “whether”

Ex: “Does she like roses or not?”, he wondered.

→ He wondered whether she liked roses or not.

#### b. Câu hỏi Wh-questions

S	+	asked wondered wanted to know	+	sb	+	Wh/ H + S + V(lùi thì)
---	---	-------------------------------------	---	----	---	------------------------

Ex: “Where do you live, Nam?”, asked she.

→ She asked Nam where he lived.

### 3. Câu trực tiếp ở dạng mệnh lệnh (V-inf/ Don’t + V-inf, please)

S	+	asked/ told/ ordered/ advised/ wanted/ warned	+	sb	+	(not) to V-inf
---	---	--	---	----	---	----------------

Ex1: “Open the book page 117, please”, the teacher said.

→ The teacher asked us to open the book page 117.

Ex2: “Don’t touch that dog”, he said.

→ He asked me not to touch that dog.

### 4. Các trường hợp khác:

#### a. Câu gián tiếp với động từ + to V

- promise + to V: hứa làm gì

- invite sb + to V: mời ai làm gì

- threaten + to V: đe dọa làm gì

- remind + sb + to V: nhắc nhở ai làm gì

- offer + to V: đề nghị làm gì

- encourage sb + to V: khuyến khích ai làm gì

- agree + to V: đồng ý làm gì
- warn + sb + not to V: cảnh báo không nên làm gì
- tell/ask sb + to V: bảo/yêu cầu ai làm gì
- advise sb + to V: khuyên ai làm gì

**b. Câu gián tiếp với động từ + V-ing**

- admit + V-ing: thừa nhận làm gì
- deny + V-ing: phủ nhận làm gì
- suggest + V-ing: gợi ý/ đề nghị làm gì
- confess to V-ing: thú nhận làm gì
- insist on + V-ing: khẳng định làm gì
- object to + V-ing: phản đối làm gì
- accuse sb of + V-ing: buộc tội ai vì làm gì
- apologize (to sb) for + V-ing: xin lỗi ai vì làm gì
- congratulate sb on + V-ing: chúc mừng vì làm gì
- criticize sb for V-ing: chỉ trích vì làm gì
- thank sb for + V-ing: cảm ơn ai vì làm gì
- warn sb against + V-ing: cảnh báo ai không nên làm gì
- complain (to sb) about + V-ing: phàn nàn về điều gì

**B. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**BT 1. Viết lại câu bằng cách chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp**

1. Nam said: "I have just received a postcard from my foreign friend."  
=> .....
2. Thu said: "All the students will have a meeting next week."  
=> .....
3. I told my teacher: "I forgot to do my homework."  
=> .....
4. Peter said: "If I pass this test, my father will buy me a new skateboard."  
=> .....
5. Her father said to her: "You can go to the movie with your friend".  
=> .....
6. "I am looking forward to my grandfather's gift", Phong said.  
=> .....
7. "We will start collecting the data next month." Minh said to me.  
=> .....
8. "Are there any oranges in the fridge?", she asked her mom.  
=> .....
9. "Were you reading this book at 8 o'clock last Sunday?", she asked Ba.  
=> .....
10. "Will it rain tomorrow morning?", he asked his friend.  
=> .....
11. "Do your sister and brother go to the same school?", she asked Nam.  
=> .....
12. He said: "Have you finished your task, Nam?"  
=> .....
13. "Can you lend me ten pounds?" said the boy to me.

- => .....
14. I said to John, "Why aren't you looking for a job?"
- => .....
15. "How do you go to the airport?" his friend asked him.
- => .....
16. "Whose car did you borrow last night?" I said to him.
- => .....
17. "Where does your father work?" the teacher asked me.
- => .....
18. Tam's friend asked him: "How long will you stay in England?"
- => .....
19. "What have you done to cope with your work stress?" My doctor asked me.
- => .....
20. "How many lessons are you going to learn next month?", he asked me.
- => .....

**BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. The interviewer asked me what experience \_\_\_\_\_ for the job.  
 A. do you get                      B. did I get                      C. I got                      D. you got
2. They asked me whether I was working \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. next day afternoon                      B. the afternoon followed  
 C. the following afternoon                      D. tomorrow afternoon
3. "Where have you been hiding?", she asked. She asked me where \_\_\_\_\_ hiding.  
 A. I have been                      B. have I been                      C. had I be                      D. I had been
4. He asked me \_\_\_\_\_ home the day before.  
 A. what time I leave                      B. what time I will leave  
 C. what time I had left                      D. what time I left
5. John asked me \_\_\_\_\_ in English.  
 A. what does this word mean                      B. what that word means  
 C. what did this word mean                      D. what that word meant
6. She said I \_\_\_\_\_ an angel.  
 A. am                      B. was                      C. were                      D. have been
7. Peter said that he had lived in London four years \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. then                      B. ago                      C. before                      D. later
8. John asked me \_\_\_\_\_ interested in any kind of sports.  
 A. if I were                      B. if were I                      C. if was I                      D. if I was
9. Do you know where \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. he lives                      B. did he live                      C. does he live                      D. he lived
10. She asked me \_\_\_\_\_ the seat \_\_\_\_\_ or not.  
 A. if / had occupied                      B. whether / was occupied  
 C. if / has been occupied                      D. whether / occupied
11. She said she \_\_\_\_\_ collect it for me after work.  
 A. would                      B. did                      C. will                      D. had
12. I asked him but \_\_\_\_\_ he said nothing.

- A. what the matter was  
C. the matter was what
13. He asked me where I \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. have studied                      B. study                      C. am studying                      D. studied
14. James \_\_\_\_\_ him up when the bus reached the square.
- A. told me wake                      B. asked me to wake  
C. said me to wake                      D. requested me waking
14. Excuse me. Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?
- A. what time is it                      B. what is the time                      C. what time it is                      D. it is what time
16. We wonder \_\_\_\_\_ from his office after that scandal.
- A. why did he not resign                      B. why he did not resign  
C. why he not resign                      D. why didn't he resign
17. Jim wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. that why were his friends laughing                      B. why were his friends laughing  
C. why his friends were laughing                      D. the reason why his friends laughing
18. Mr Hawk told me that he would give me his answer the \_\_\_\_\_ day.
- A. previous                      B. following                      C. before                      D. last
19. She \_\_\_\_\_ him whether he liked the steak she cooked.
- A. asks                      B. wondered                      C. wanted to know                      D. asked
20. His neighbours sometimes wondered \_\_\_\_\_ he did for a living.
- A. why                      B. when                      C. where                      D. what

**BT 3. Viết các câu sang câu gián tiếp dạng mệnh lệnh**

1. "Fill in the form, Sir," the receptionist said.  
→ The receptionist asked the guest .....
2. "Take off your shoes," she told us.  
→ She told us .....
3. "Mind your own business," she told him.  
→ She told him .....
4. She said to him: "Give me another glass of wine".  
→ She told.....
5. She said to me: "Bring me a book".  
→ She asked .....
6. The mother said to him: "Open the window please!".  
→ The mother told .....
7. The captain said to them: "Wait here until I come back".  
→ The captain asked .....
8. "Do come and enjoy tea with my family" she said.  
→ She invited us .....
9. "Don't touch it," she said to him.  
→ She told him .....
10. "Don't do that again," he said to me.  
→ He told me .....

11. "Don't talk to me like that," he said.  
→ He told her .....
12. "Don't repair the computer yourself," she warned him.  
→ She warned him .....
13. "Don't let him in," she said.  
→ She told me .....
14. "Don't go out without me," he begged her.  
→ He begged her .....
15. "Don't forget your bag," she told me.  
→ She told me .....

**BT 4. Chia dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc với “to V/ Ving”**

1. Roberr promised (keep) \_\_\_\_\_ it as a secret.
2. The doctor advised him (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ smoking and eating more vegetable.
3. I couldn't move the piano alone, so I asked Tom (give) \_\_\_\_\_ a hand.
4. Lisa told her boyfriend (not smoke) \_\_\_\_\_ in her dining room.
5. My parents reminded me (plant) \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers.
6. The boy admitted (not do) \_\_\_\_\_ the homework.
7. Our grandparents used to suggest (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ sunglasses when we were out on bright sunny days.
8. Robert offered (help) \_\_\_\_\_ Carlo do the dishes.
9. The captain ordered his men (abandon) \_\_\_\_\_ the ship immediately.
10. Tom promised (give) \_\_\_\_\_ Janet the answer by the end of the week.
11. Jane criticized Frank for (disclose) \_\_\_\_\_ their confidential report to the press.
12. The kidnappers threatened (kill) \_\_\_\_\_ our boy if we did not pay the ransom.
13. John apologized to his Mum for (break) \_\_\_\_\_ his promise.
14. Steve warned Mike (touch) \_\_\_\_\_ the wires as it might be deadly.
15. Nam criticized Lan for (have) \_\_\_\_\_ told the truth.

**BT 5. Chọn câu sao cho nghĩa không thay đổi**

**1. “If I were you, I would go to the doctor” Minh said to Lan.**

- A. Minh told Lan to become a doctor .
- B. Minh told Lan he would go to the doctor.
- C. Minh advised Lan to go to the doctor.
- D. Minh advised Lan not to go to the doctor.

**2. “You’d better apologise for being late,” said my mother.**

- A. My mother advised me to apologise for being late.
- B. My mother suggested me to apologise for being late.

- C. My mother suggested apologising for being late.
- D. My mother warned me to apologise for being late.

**3. “Don’t open your books,” the teacher said to the pupils.**

- A. The teacher told the pupils to not open their books.
- B. The teacher told the pupils did not open their books.
- C. The teacher told the pupils not open their books.
- D. The teacher told the pupils not to open their books.

**4. “ Why don’t you study hard for the coming exam, Ba” Tom said.**

- A. Tom advised me not to study hard for the coming exam
- B. Tom advised me to study hard for the coming exam.
- C. Tom advised Ba not to study hard for the coming exam
- D. Tom advised Ba to study hard for the coming exam.

**5. “I’m really sorry for being late again.” Nga said.**

- A. I felt sorry for Nga’s being late again.
- B. Nga was sorry for my being late again.
- C. Nga excused for my being late again.
- D. Nga apologized for being late again.

**6. “How beautiful the dress you have just bought is!” Peter said to Mary.**

- A. Peter promised to buy Mary a beautiful dress.
- B. Peter said thanks to Mary for her beautiful dress.
- C. Peter complimented Mary on her beautiful dress.
- D. Peter asked Mary how she had just bought her beautiful dress.

**7. “Please accept my apology for arriving late,” Nga said to her teacher.**

- A. Nga apologised to her teacher for her late arrival.
- B. Nga thought she would apologise to her teacher for arriving late.
- C. Nga quickly made an apology and the teacher accepted it.
- D. Nga had to make an apology because her teacher demanded it.

**8. “You shouldn’t have told the truth, Lan.” said Nam.**

- A. Nam suspected that lan had told the truth.
- B. Nam criticized Lan for having told the truth.
- C. Nam accused Lan of having told the truth.
- D. Nam blamed Lan for having told the truth.

**9. “I will pay back the money, Nga.” said Nam.**

- A. Nam apologized to Nga for borrowing her money.
- B. Nam offered to pay Nga the money back.
- C. Nam promised to pay back Nga’s money.

D. Nam suggested paying back the money to Nga.

**10. “Would you like to come to my birthday party, Lan?” asked Huy.**

- A. Huy invited Lan to his birthday party.
- B. Huy asked if Lan was able to come to his birthday party.
- C. Huy asked Lan if she liked his birthday party or not.
- D. Huy reminded Lan of his coming birthday party.

**11. “Why don’t you ask the teacher for help? Hung said to me.**

- A. Hung recommended me not to ask the teacher for help.
- B. Hung advised me to ask the teacher for help.
- C. Hung told me the reason why I did not ask the teacher for help.
- D. Hung suggested that he should ask the teacher for help.

**12. “Remember to pick up at 5 o’clock tomorrow afternoon.” she said.**

- A. She told me to remember to pick her up at 5 o’clock tomorrow afternoon.
- B. She reminded me to pick her up at 5 o’clock tomorrow afternoon.
- C. She reminded me to remember to pick her up at 5 o’clock tomorrow afternoon.
- D. She told me to pick her up at 5 o’clock tomorrow afternoon.

**13. “I would be grateful if you did the work.” he said to me.**

- A. He politely asked me to do the work.
- B. He flattered me because I did the work.
- C. He thanked me for doing the work.
- D. He felt great because I did the work.

**14. “I will not leave until I see her.” Nam said.**

- A. Nam was persuaded to see her before leaving.
- B. Nam asked he would leave before he saw her.
- C. Nam refused to leave until he saw her.
- D. Nam decided to leave because he did not see her.

**15. “Stop smoking or you’ll feel worse.” the doctor told me.**

- A. The doctor suggested smoking to feel better.
- B. The doctor advised me to give up smoking to feel better.
- C. I was ordered not to smoke to feel better.
- D. I was warned against smoking a lot of cigarettes.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: PHÂN BIỆT  
USED TO VÀ BE/GET USED TO**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

	<b>USED TO</b>	<b>BE/ GET USED TO</b>
<b>1. Định nghĩa</b>	dùng để miêu tả một thói quen, một hành động thường xuyên xảy ra trong quá khứ và bây giờ không còn nữa.	Dùng để miêu tả 1 thói quen ở hiện tại
<b>2. Cấu trúc</b>	(+) S + used to + V (-) S + didn't + use to + V (?) Did + S + use to + V?	S + tobe / get + used to + Ving
<b>3. Ví dụ</b>	(+) I used to collect the stamps. (-) He didn't use to play marbles. (?) Did you use to ride a buffalo?	- She gets used to getting up early. - He is used to eating breakfast every day.

**II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**BT 1: Hoàn thành các câu sau với cấu trúc “used to” và động từ trong ngoặc**

- Do you know what (Jim/ do) \_\_\_\_\_ before he retired?
- \_\_\_\_\_ (Mary/ be) a successful businesswoman before she went bankrupt?
- My family (not travel) \_\_\_\_\_ during summer vacation but now we really enjoy it.
- I wonder what (people/ do) \_\_\_\_\_ to celebrate the Harvest Festival in the past?
- As a kid, Josh (have) \_\_\_\_\_ his grandfather pick him up from primary school.
- This boy band (be) \_\_\_\_\_ popular before they disbanded.
- When my grandmother was young, she (set off) \_\_\_\_\_ for a foreign country almost every summer.
- My mother says that she (not cope) \_\_\_\_\_ with much work stress 5 years ago.
- In the past, people in my village (raise) \_\_\_\_\_ poultry or cattle to earn a living.
- I can't believe my father (be) \_\_\_\_\_ considered a bad boy before he married my mother.
- Who (you/ confide) \_\_\_\_\_ in when you was at your teenage?
- They (not use) \_\_\_\_\_ fork and knife when they first moved to America.
- Jim (not like) \_\_\_\_\_ me much when we were at school but now he is my husband.
- My father (work) \_\_\_\_\_ very far from home before he found his current job.
- Those men (suffer) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot before they finally succeeded in their business.

**BT 2. Viết lại các câu sau bằng cấu trúc “used to”**

1. Men were the breadwinner of the family and women depended greatly on men.

=> .....

2. Who took care of you when you were a toddler?

=> .....

3. Jim wasn't interested in reading books when he was small but now he's really into it.

=> .....

4. My brother had his hair cut short when he joined the army.

=> .....

5. Dennis gave up smoking three years ago.

=> .....

6. My parents lived in the USA when they were young.

=> .....

7. Jim was my best friend, but we aren't friends any more.

=> .....

8. When he was younger, my uncle was a national swimming champion.

=> .....

9. I eat ice-cream now, but I disliked eating it when I was a child.

=> .....

10. When Barbara was Italy, she stayed with an Italian family.

=> .....

**BT 3. Chia động từ trong ngoặc**

1. When I was a student, I used to (work) \_\_\_\_\_ in a bar.

2. I will never get used to (work) \_\_\_\_\_ nights. I prefer working days

3. She isn't used to (live) \_\_\_\_\_ on her own. The house feels quite empty.

4. When I worked in the city, I used to (get up) \_\_\_\_\_ really early.

5. Are you getting used to (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in your new house yet?

6. We are not used to (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in a cold climate. We're used to a warm one.

7. I used to (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a gardener. I'm not used to (sit) \_\_\_\_\_ in an office all day.

8. Since I retired from my job, I can't get used to (have) \_\_\_\_\_ nothing to do all day.

9. In my last job, I used to (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ a suite and tie. Now I wear jeans.

10. I was just getting used to (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ glasses.

11. I was used to (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ at noon when I started school.

12. He used to (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at five o'clock.

13. When I was young, I used to (swim) \_\_\_\_\_ everyday.

14. He used to (like) \_\_\_\_\_ her, but he doesn't anymore.
15. Don't worry, some day you will get used to (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
16. Lan can't get used to (study) \_\_\_\_\_.
17. He used to (dance) \_\_\_\_\_ every night, but now he studies.
18. Adam is used to (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ late on the weekends.
19. Lots of trains used to (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ here, but not many do now.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ Nick use to (work) \_\_\_\_\_ on a building site?

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: CÂU ƯỚC (WISHES)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

Loại	Công thức và dấu hiệu	Ví dụ
Loại 1: ước 1 điều không có thật ở hiện tại	CT: S + wish (es) + QKĐ (S + <b>wish (es)</b> + S + <b>were (not)/ Ved/ V2/ didn't + V</b> ) DH: in the morning, now, at the moment, at present, ...	-He wishes he <u>didn't work</u> in this company <u>at present</u> . -I wish I <u>were</u> a teacher <u>at the moment</u> .
Loại 2: ước 1 điều không có thật ở quá khứ	CT: S + wish (es) + QKHT (S + <b>wish (es)</b> + S + <b>had (not) + Ved/ V3</b> ) DH: ago, yesterday, last night, ...	Mary wishes she <u>had gone</u> to school <u>yesterday</u> .
Loại 3: ước 1 điều trong tương lai	S + <b>wish (es)</b> + S + <b>would/could (not) + V</b> DH: next week, tomorrow, ...	She wishes she <u>would earn</u> a lot of money <u>next year</u> .

**Lưu ý: I wish = If only (giá mà/ phải chi)**

### II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

#### BT 1. Chia các động từ dưới đây

1. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ here now. (be)
2. She wishes you \_\_\_\_\_ better. (feel)
3. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ he work tonight. (finish)
4. We wish you \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. (come)
5. She wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ the window last night. (open)
6. We wish they \_\_\_\_\_ with us last weekend. (come)
7. They wish he \_\_\_\_\_ with them the next day. (come)
8. They wish we \_\_\_\_\_ them some food yesterday. (give)
9. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the answers. (not lose)
10. You wish you \_\_\_\_\_ what to do last year. (know)
11. I wish that he \_\_\_\_\_ us next year. (visit)
12. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the subject more interesting. (find)
13. They wish he \_\_\_\_\_ them next week. (telephone)
14. He wishes you \_\_\_\_\_ him in the future. (help)
15. She wishes the mail \_\_\_\_\_ soon. (come)
16. We wish they \_\_\_\_\_ or we will miss the bus. (hurry)
17. He wishes he \_\_\_\_\_ us the book. (show)
18. They wish they \_\_\_\_\_ the appointment. (not forget)
19. We wish it \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. (not snow)
20. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ here tomorrow. (not leave)

## BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng

1. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ speak Spanish.  
A. should                      B. could                      C. can                      D. will
2. My sister wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ to play the piano when she was young.  
A. learnt                      B. would learn                      C. had learnt                      D. would have learnt
3. I wish someone \_\_\_\_\_ to help me with that word tomorrow.  
A. offer                      B. offered                      C. would offer                      D. had offered
4. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ there for my holiday year. I didn't enjoy it.  
A. didn't go                      B. hadn't gone                      C. wouldn't go                      D. would rather go
5. He wishes he \_\_\_\_\_ the examination last month.  
A. didn't fail                      B. hadn't failed                      C. weren't failing                      D. couldn't have failed
6. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ to me more often.  
A. writes                      B. wrote                      C. have written                      D. is writing
7. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ more time now to help you with your lesson  
A. have                      B. had                      C. would have                      D. had had
8. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ psychology when I was a college student.  
A. had studied                      B. would study                      C. studied                      D. study
9. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ play the guitar as well as you.  
A. would                      B. should                      C. could                      D. might
10. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ my letter of application earlier.  
A. wrote                      B. had written                      C. could write                      D. should write
11. He spent only three years in college. He wishes he \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. had finished                      B. finished                      C. will finish                      D. will have finished
12. He won't apologize of breaking it. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he would                      B. he did                      C. he didn't                      D. he will
13. My friend won't lend me his car. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. He lent me his car                      B. He didn't lend me his car  
C. he would lend me his car                      D. he will lend me his car
14. My mother isn't free today. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. my mother is free today                      B. my mother won't be busy today  
C. my mother would be free today                      D. my mother were free today.
15. I'm afraid our team will lose the game today. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. our team won the game today                      B. our team would win the game today  
C. our team had won the game today                      D. our team didn't lose the game today
16. It wasn't fine yesterday. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it was fine yesterday                      B. it would fine yesterday  
C. it will fine yesterday                      D. it had been fine yesterday
17. My friends didn't take part in the game. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. My friends took part in the game                      B. My friends had taken part in the game  
C. My friends would take part in the game                      D. My friends did take part in the game
18. My sister can't speak Vietnamese.  
A. I wish my sister to speak Vietnamese.                      B. I wish my sister could speak Vietnamese.  
C. Speaking Vietnamese is a wish.                      D. My sister wishes to be spoken Vietnamese.
19. It's a pity. I can't play chess.  
A. I wish I can play chess.                      B. I wish I could played chess.  
C. I wish I play chess.                      D. I wish I could play chess.
20. Lan didn't apply for the job in the library and regrets it now.  
A. Lan wishes she had applied for in the library.

B. Lan wishes she have applied for the job in the library.

C. Lan wishes she has applied for the job in the library.

D. Lan wishes she applies for the job in the library

**BT 3: Viết lại câu sao cho nghĩa không đổi**

1. I have to learn English hard.

→ I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

2. They had a lot of homework last Monday.

→ They wish \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Cuc wishes, she were a famous singer.

→ If only \_\_\_\_\_.

4. He doesn't like playing sports.

→ He wishes \_\_\_\_\_.

5. It was so hot last Sunday.

→ I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Minh doesn't take part in playing tennis with us.

→ I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

7. My grandfather wishes, he could live in Danang with us.

→ If only \_\_\_\_\_.

8. I didn't buy a new phone last evening.

→ I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

9. I and my team didn't go to the cinema yesterday because it rained.

→ I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

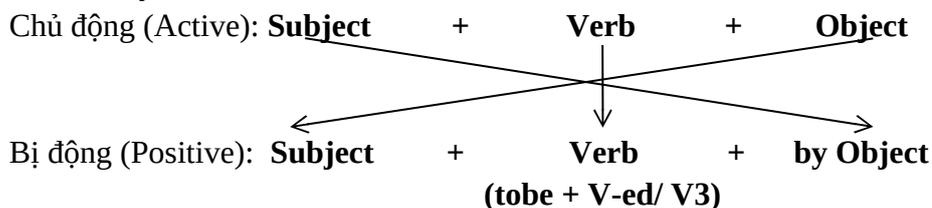
10. Lan wants to go to the shopping with her sister now.

→ Lan wishes \_\_\_\_\_.

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (PASSIVE VOICES)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Cách chuyển



Ex: They planted a tree in the garden.

⇒ A tree was planted in the garden (by them).

#### 2. Các bước chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động

- Bước 1: Xác định tân ngữ trong câu chủ động, chuyển thành chủ ngữ câu bị động.
- Bước 2: Xác định thì (tense) trong câu chủ động rồi chuyển động từ về thể bị động theo công thức (to be + V-ed/ V3).
- Bước 3: Chuyển đổi chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động thành tân ngữ thêm “by” phía trước.

#### 3. Bảng quy đổi các thì ở thể bị động

Thì	Chủ động (A)	Bị động (P)
Hiện tại đơn	S + V-inf/ s/ es + O	S + am/ is/ are + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
Hiện tại tiếp diễn	S + am/ is/ are + V-ing + O	S + am/ is/ are + being + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
Hiện tại hoàn thành	S + have/ has + V-ed/ V3 + O	S + have/ has + been + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
Quá khứ đơn	S + V-ed/ V2 + O	S + was/ were + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
Quá khứ tiếp diễn	S + was/ were + V-ing + O	S + was/ were + being + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
Quá khứ hoàn thành	S + had + V-ed/ V3 + O	S + had + been + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
Tương lai đơn	S + will + V-inf + O	S + will + be + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
Động từ khuyết thiếu	S + ĐTKT + V-inf + O	S + ĐTKT + be + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)

#### 4. Lưu ý

- Không dùng "By + tân ngữ" nếu chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động có tính mơ hồ, chung chung (people, something, someone, they, etc)  
Ex: *Someone stole my motorbike last night.*  
⇒ *My motorbike was stolen last night.*
- Nếu S trong câu chủ động là: I, you, we, they, he, she => có thể bỏ đi trong câu bị động nếu ta không muốn đề cập tới chủ thể gây ra hành động.  
Ex: *My father waters this flower every morning.*  
⇒ *This flower is watered (by my father) every morning.*
- Nếu là người hoặc vật trực tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng "by", nhưng gián tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng "with".  
Ex: *The bird was shot by the hunter.*  
*The bird was shot with a gun.*
- Trong câu chủ động nếu có trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian và trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn khi chuyển sang câu bị động sẽ có dạng:

**trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn + by + trạng từ chỉ thời gian**

Ex: *Hoa is making a cake in the kitchen now.*

⇒ *A cake is being made in the kitchen by Hoa now.*

#### 5. Những trường hợp đặc biệt

##### a. Câu bị động với động từ chỉ quan điểm, ý kiến

Các động từ chỉ quan điểm, ý kiến là: say (nói rằng)/ think (nghĩ rằng)/ believe (tin rằng)/ report (thông báo rằng)/ consider (xem xét rằng)/ suppose (cho rằng), ...

(A) S1 (people/ they) + V1 (say/ think/ believe...) + (that) + S2 + V2.

(P)

C1: It + tobe + V1 (ed/ V3) + that + S2 + V2.  
(said/ thought/ believed...)

C2: S2 + tobe + V1 (ed/ V3) + → to V (nếu V1 và V2 cùng thì).  
(said/ thought/ believed...)

→ to have +V2-ed/V3 (nếu V1 và V2 khác thì)

→ to be V2-ing (nếu V2 là thì tiếp diễn)

Ex1: People said that he was nice to his friends.

Cách 1: *It was said that he was nice to his friends.*

Cách 2: *He was said to be nice to his friends.*

Ex2: People think he stole his mother's money.

Cách 1: *It is thought that he stole his mother's money.*

Cách 2: *He is thought to have stolen his mother's money.*

Ex3: They reported that the troops were coming.

Cách 1: *It was reported that the troops were coming.*

Cách 2: *The troops was reported to be coming.*

**b. Câu bị động với động từ chỉ sự nhờ vả, sai khiến**

Active	Passive
S + have + sb + V + sth.	S + have + sth + Ved/ V3 + (by + sb)
S + get + sb + to V + sth.	S + get + sth + Ved/ V3 + (by + sb)
S + make + sb + V + sth	Sb + to be made + to V + sth + (by sb)

Ex1: Thomas has his son buy a cup of coffee.

⇒ Thomas has a cup of coffee bought by his son.

Ex2: Shally got her husband to clean the kitchen for her.

⇒ Shally got the kitchen cleaned by her husband.

Ex3: Suzy makes the hairdresser cut her hair.

⇒ The hairdresser is made to cut the hair by Suzy.

**II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**BT 1. Chuyển các câu sau thành câu bị động**

1. Mary types letters in the office.

.....

2. His father will help you tomorrow.

.....

3. Peter broke this bottle.

.....

4. They are learning English in the room.

.....

5. No one had told me about it.

.....

6. The chief engineer was instructing all the workers of the plan.

.....

7. Somebody has taken some of my books away.

.....

8. They have provided the victims with food and clothing.

.....

9. People speak English in almost every corner of the world.

.....

10. You mustn't use this machine after 5:30 p.m.

.....

11. Will you invite her to your wedding party?

.....

12. Did the teacher give some exercises?

.....

13. Is she making big cakes for the party?

.....

14. Must we finish the test before ten?

.....

15. Have you finished your homework?

.....

16. Where do people speak English?

.....

17. Who are they keeping in the kitchen?

.....

18. What time will Tom finish this English test?

.....

19. How can they open this safe?

.....

20. How did the police find the lost man?

.....

**BT 2. Chuyển các câu với động từ tường thuật sau sang câu bị động (2 cách)**

1. Some people believe that 13 is an unlucky number.

.....  
.....

2. They say that John is the brightest student in class.

.....  
.....

3. I knew that they had told him of the meeting.

.....  
.....

4. They declared that she won the competition.

.....  
.....

5. They rumored the man was still living.

.....  
.....

6. They reported that the troops were coming.

.....  
.....

7. People rumored that there was a ghost in that house.

.....

.....  
8. They claimed that everything they said was true.  
.....  
.....

9. They don't think that this camera costs that much.  
.....  
.....

10. People didn't expect that the building collapsed after the storm.  
.....  
.....

**BT 3. Chuyển các câu sau thành câu bị động chỉ sự nhờ vả**

1. They have her tell the story again.  
.....

2. John gets his sister to clean his shirt.  
.....

3. Anne had had a friend type her composition.  
.....

4. Rick will have a barber cut his hair.  
.....

5. I will get the dressmaker to make a new dress.  
.....

6. He had a mechanic repair his car.  
.....

7. She often gets the technician to maintain the heater.  
.....

8. They had the police arrest the shoplifter.  
.....

9. Are you going to have the shoemaker repair your shoes?  
.....

10. I must have the dentist check my teeth.  
.....

**BT 4. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. We can't go along here because the road \_\_\_\_\_.

A. is repairing                      B. is repaired                      C. is being repaired                      D. repairs

2. The story I've just read \_\_\_\_\_ Agatha Christie.

A. was written                      B. was written by                      C. was written from                      D. wrote by

3. I'm going to go out and \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. have cut my hair      B. have my hair cut      C. cut my hair      D. my hair be cut
4. Something funny \_\_\_\_\_ in class yesterday.
- A. happened      B. was happened      C. happens      D. is happened
5. Some film stars \_\_\_\_\_ difficult to work with.
- A. are said be      B. are said to be      C. say to be      D. said to be
6. Today, many serious childhood diseases \_\_\_\_\_ by early immunization.
- A. are preventing      B. can prevent      C. can be prevented      D. prevent
7. Do you get your heating \_\_\_\_\_ every year?
- A. checking      B. check      C. be checked      D. checked
8. All bottles \_\_\_\_\_ before transportation.
- A. frozen      B. was frozen      C. were frozen      D. are froze
9. The telephones \_\_\_\_\_ by Alexander Graham Bell.
- A. is invented      B. is inventing      C. invented      D. was invented
10. They've already \_\_\_\_\_, sir. They're on your desk.
- A. typed      B. been being typed      C. being typed      D. been typed
11. Sarah is wearing a blouse. It \_\_\_\_\_ of cotton.
- A. be made      B. are made      C. is made      D. made
12. They had a boy \_\_\_\_\_ that yesterday.
- A. done      B. to do      C. did      D. do
13. We got our mail \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- A. been delivered      B. delivered      C. delivering      D. to deliver
14. Mr. Wilson is \_\_\_\_\_ as Willie to his friend.
- A. known      B. knew      C. is known      D. know
15. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ by a dog?
- A. bite      B. ever been bit      C. ever been bitten      D. bit
16. The room is being \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
- A. was cleaned      B. cleaned      C. cleaning      D. clean
17. It \_\_\_\_\_ that the strike will end soon.
- A. is expected      B. was expected      C. are expected      D. expected
18. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that many people are homeless after the floods.
- A. was reported      B. reports      C. reported      D. reporting
19. He was said \_\_\_\_\_ this building.
- A. designing      B. to have designed      C. to design      D. designed
20. Parrots and crows \_\_\_\_\_ the most intelligent birds.
- A. were considering      B. are considered      C. was considered      D. considered

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: CÁCH SỬ DỤNG CỦA SUGGEST**  
**(USAGES OF SUGGEST)**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

<b>Cấu trúc</b>	1. <b>S + suggest + Ving</b> 2. <b>S + suggest + S + (should) + V</b>
<b>Cách dùng</b>	1. Cấu trúc “suggest + Ving” được dùng để nói chung chung, không ám chỉ một người cụ thể nào. 2. Cấu trúc “suggest that + S + V” khi muốn khuyên 1 người hoặc 1 nhóm người cụ thể
<b>Ví dụ</b>	1. He suggested <u>travelling</u> together for safety since the area was so dangerous. 2. I suggest (that) we <u>go</u> out to have dinner. I know a very restaurant.
<b>Lưu ý</b>	Trong trường hợp dùng mệnh đề “that” thì động từ theo sau luôn ở dạng nguyên thể không “to” Ví dụ: The doctor suggests that <u>he lose</u> some weights.

**II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**BT 1. Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng**

1. My father suggested that I (**took/ take**) an English course this year.
2. My brother suggested (**playing/ to play**) cards while waiting for our mother.
3. The doctor suggests that Jim (**do/ does**) more exercises to keep fit.
4. Mr. Brown suggests that his son (**doing/ do**) his homework before hanging out with friends.
5. Jane suggested (**should hold/ holding**) a party next week.
6. Peter suggested that I (**changed/ change**) my sandals into rain boots because it was raining outside.
7. The mayor suggested that there (**should be/ was**) more trees along the main roads.
8. I suggested (**we took/ taking**) part in the competition because of the huge prize.
9. Does Mr. Brown suggest that Peter (**goes/ go**) to school on his own?
10. My professor suggested that I (**shouldn't choose/ not choose**) that course for the next semester.

**BT 2. Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc**

1. They suggest that you (keep) \_\_\_\_\_ working hard to achieve your goal.
2. Peter suggested that Jane (not spend) \_\_\_\_\_ too much time on computer.
3. My friend suggested (not take) \_\_\_\_\_ the dog for a walk as it was showing outside.
4. The bookseller suggests his customer (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ the newly released book of a famous author.
5. My teacher suggests that we (use) \_\_\_\_\_ paperback dictionary to look up new words instead of using online dictionary.
6. It is suggested that children (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ a foreign language at an early age.
7. The tour guide suggested that we (try) \_\_\_\_\_ the local specialties.

8. My classmates suggest (throw) \_\_\_\_\_ a party to celebrate the Teacher's Day.
9. The instructor suggested that Jane (pay) \_\_\_\_\_ more attention to his instruction.
10. Jim suggested (play) \_\_\_\_\_ the piano and (sing) \_\_\_\_\_ along.

**BT 3. Hoàn thành những câu sau với dạng đúng của động từ cho sẵn**

Get	play	hold	visit	buy
Go	rewrite	travel	pay	carry

1. My foreign friend suggested \_\_\_\_\_ sightseeing in the suburbs this weekend.
2. Mrs. Brown suggested \_\_\_\_\_ the most famous tourist attractions in Vietnam this summer holiday.
3. My mom suggested that I \_\_\_\_\_ back my energy after studying hard by going shopping.
4. Peter suggested that I \_\_\_\_\_ my children some bracelets as souvenir after my business trip to Chinese.
5. Mary suggested that we \_\_\_\_\_ to the South of Vietnam this summer.
6. Did the teacher suggest that we \_\_\_\_\_ a project on preserving wonders of Vietnam?
7. Peter suggests \_\_\_\_\_ a small party to celebrate his friend's birthday tomorrow.
8. My uncle suggested that our family \_\_\_\_\_ a visit to Huong Pagoda.
9. Peter suggests \_\_\_\_\_ badminton every day after school.
10. The teacher suggested that I should \_\_\_\_\_ my essay àn submit it later.

**BT 4. Viết lại các câu sau với từ “suggest”**

1. "Peter should learn English." The teacher said.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
2. "It's a good idea that you take a rest from work." My sister said to me.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
3. "How about going to the sea this weekend?" Tom asked.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
4. "Jim, you should never play truant again." Jane said.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
5. "Why don't we go out and enjoy the weather?" My mom said.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
6. "If you visit Hanoi, you should go to Hoan Kiem Lake." My friend told me.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
7. "Jane, why don't you finish your homework before going out?" Jane's mother said.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
8. "Let's work out the solution together!" Peter says.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
9. "What about having dinner together?" My neighbor asked.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
10. My father advised me to take any opportunities that I had.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: CẤU TRÚC TÍNH TỪ (STRUCTURES OF ADJECTIVE)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Tính từ đi cùng với “to + V”

Cấu trúc 1:

<b>Cách dùng</b>	Tính từ + to V có nghĩa là “thật là như thế nào để (ai đó) làm gì, dùng để nhấn mạnh thông tin.
<b>Cấu trúc</b>	<b>It + tobe + adj + (for O) + to V</b>
<b>Ví dụ</b>	It’s hard to believe that she failed the exam. It was danergous for Harry to drive fast.

Cấu trúc 2:

<b>Cách dùng</b>	Tính từ + to V còn được dùng để diễn tả phản ứng, cảm xúc, sự tự tin hay lo lắng.
<b>Cấu trúc</b>	<b>S + tobe + adj + to V</b>
<b>Các tính từ thông dụng</b>	happy/ glad (vui), pleased (hài lòng), relieved (nhẹ nhõm), sorry (tiếc), certain/ sure (chắc chắn), confident (tự tin), afraid (sợ), annoyed (khó chịu), astonished (ngạc nhiên), aware (nhận thấy), conscious (tỉnh, ý thức) ...
<b>Ví dụ</b>	Tom was surprised to see you. I’m sorry to hear that your father is ill.

#### 2. Tính từ đi cùng với mệnh đề danh từ

<b>Cách dùng</b>	Tính từ + mệnh đề danh từ được dùng để diễn tả cảm xúc, sự tự tin hay lo lắng.
<b>Cấu trúc</b>	<b>S + tobe + adj + that + S + V</b>
<b>Các tính từ thông dụng</b>	- Chỉ cảm xúc: happy/ glad (vui), pleased (hài lòng), delighted (vui mừng), relieved (nhẹ nhõm), sorry (tiếc), surprising (ngạc nhiên)... - Chỉ sự tin tưởng hay lo lắng: certain/ sure (chắc chắn), confident (tự tin), afraid (sợ), annoyed (khó chịu), astonished (ngạc nhiên), aware (nhận thấy), conscious (tỉnh, ý thức)...
<b>Ví dụ</b>	I am delighted that you passed your exam. It was quite surprising that he is a billionaire.

### II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

#### BT 1. Dựa vào những từ cho trước, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

- It/ hard/ Jim/ do/ this/ task.

- ⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
2. It/ not/ easy/ me/ pass/ the/ test.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
3. It/ challenging/ you/ change your/ job/ now.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mary/ always/ afraid/ try/ anything/ new.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
5. You/ confident/ win/ the/ competition?  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
6. My mother/ pleased/ see/ me/ at/ home/ now.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
7. I/ sorry/ to/ hear/ that/ you/ have/ accident/ last week.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
8. I/ glad/ you/ come/ to/ my/ party.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
9. It/ not/ surprising/ Peter/ be/ best/ student/ in/ his/ class.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_
10. I/ convinced/ Peter/ be/ right.  
⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

**BT 2. Khoanh vào lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.**

1. I sure that you have mistaken my pen for yours.  
A B C D
2. Peter is not confident presenting his ideas to the class.  
A B C D
3. It is impossible that a fish to climb a tree.  
A B C D
4. Is it possible for me winning this competition?  
A B C D
5. Mr. Brown was relieved hearing his wife was not injured in the accident.  
A B C D
6. Are you certain that he to be the pickpocket?  
A B C D
7. Peter astonished that he accidentally found his childhood toy.  
A B C D
8. It is difficult for you pass the test if you don't study hard.  
A B C D
9. Were they be able to swim across that river?  
A B C D
10. They don't aware that staying up late is bad for health.  
A B C D

**BT 3. Viết lại câu sao cho nghĩa không đổi**

1. Learning English is not difficult for me.

=> It is \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Jim was very confident when he said that he was the best.

=> Jim was very confident to \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Peter received a letter from his foreign friend yesterday. He was very happy about it.

=> Peter was very happy to \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I can't come to your party this weekend, I'm afraid.

=> I am afraid \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Doing gardening is not as easy as it looks

=> It is not \_\_\_\_\_.

6. I had no difficulty in making the last decision.

=> It was not \_\_\_\_\_.

7. I think Peter is very happy. He has won a lottery.

=> I think Peter is very happy that \_\_\_\_\_.

8. You were so lucky. You ran into a famous singer.

=> You were so lucky to \_\_\_\_\_.

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: TỪ CHỈ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG (QUANTIFIERS)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Định nghĩa

- Lượng từ (Quantifiers) là các từ chỉ số lượng, chúng được đặt trước danh từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ.
- Một số lượng từ thường gặp trong tiếng Anh:

Lượng từ + danh từ đếm được	Lượng từ + danh từ không đếm được	Lượng từ + cả hai
A large/ great number of (một số lượng lớn)	A large amount of (một lượng lớn)	Any (bất cứ)
Several (một vài)	A great deal of (một lượng lớn)	Some (chút/ một ít)
Many (nhiều)	Much (nhiều)	Most (phần lớn)
Few/ A few (vài/ một vài)	Little/ a little (chút/ một chút)	Most of (phần lớn của)
Every/ each (mỗi)		Plenty of (nhiều của)
A majority of (đa số)		A lot of/ lots of (nhiều của)

#### 2. Phân biệt 1 số cách dùng lượng từ

Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “NHIỀU”	- <b>MANY</b> = a large number of/ a great many/ a majority of/ a wide variety of/ a wide range of - Dùng với danh từ đếm được. VD: <i>I have <u>many/ a number of interesting books.</u></i>	<b>MUCH</b> = a great deal of/ a large amount of... - Dùng với danh từ không đếm được. VD: <i>They drink <u>much/ a large amount of water</u> every day.</i>
	<b>MANY + MUCH</b> = A lot of/ lots of/ plenty of/ a (large) quantity of (Dùng với cả danh từ cả đếm được và không đếm được). VD: <i>He spent <u>much/ a lot of money</u> for the car.</i>	
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “MỘT ÍT”	<b>A FEW</b>	<b>A LITTLE</b>
	- Dùng với danh từ đếm được. VD: <i>I've got <u>a few interesting books.</u></i>	- Dùng với danh từ không đếm được. VD: <i>We have <u>a little rice</u> in the kitchen.</i>
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “HẦU NHƯ KHÔNG/ RẤT ÍT”	<b>FEW</b>	<b>LITTLE</b>
	- Dùng với danh từ đếm được. VD: <i>I've got <u>few interesting books.</u></i>	- Dùng với danh từ không đếm được. VD: <i>We have <u>little rice</u> in the kitchen.</i>
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “MỘT VÀI”	<b>SOME</b>	<b>ANY</b>
	- Dùng trong câu khẳng định và trong câu nghi vấn khi mang ý mời/đề nghị.	- Dùng trong câu phủ định, nghi vấn và dùng trong câu khẳng định khi

	<p>VD: I have <u>some money</u>.</p> <p>VD: Would you like <u>some coffee</u>?</p>	<p>nó mang ý nghĩa là “bất cứ”.</p> <p>VD: I don't have <u>any money</u>.</p> <p>VD: <u>Any dictionaries</u> can give you the meaning of this world.</p> <p>VD: If you have <u>any questions</u>, feel free to ask me.</p>
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “TẤT CẢ”	<b>ALL</b>	<b>BOTH</b>
	<p>- Dùng để chỉ từ ba người/vật (tất cả) trở lên.</p> <p>VD: I tried four hotels near the beach, but <u>all of them</u> are expensive.</p>	<p>- Dùng để chỉ cả hai người/vật (cả hai).</p> <p>VD: I tried two hotels near the beach, but <u>both of them</u> are expensive.</p>
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “KHÔNG”	<b>NONE</b>	<b>NEITHER/EITHER</b>
	<p>- Dùng để chỉ từ ba người/vật trở lên đều không.</p> <p>VD: I have three shirts, but I like <u>none of them</u>.</p> <p>- Lưu ý: No + N = none (None được dùng thay cho No + N khi cụm này được nhắc đến trước nó.)</p> <p>VD: She has many books but I have <u>none</u>. (I have none = I have no books.)</p>	<p>- Dùng để chỉ cả hai người/vật đều không. Trong đó:</p> <p>+ Neither: dùng trong câu khẳng định.</p> <p>+ Either: dùng trong câu phủ định.</p> <p>VD: I have two shirts, but I like <u>neither of them</u>.</p> <p>= I have two shirts, but I don't like <u>either of them</u>.</p>
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “HẦU HẾT”	<b>MOST</b>	<b>MOST OF</b>
	<p>- <b>Most + N = most of + the/ tính từ sở hữu + N</b></p> <p>VD: <u>Most young people</u> like facebook. = <u>Most of the young people</u> like facebook.</p> <p><b>Lưu ý:</b></p> <p><b>MOSTLY</b> (chủ yếu là): dùng như một trạng từ</p> <p>VD: The customers here are <u>mostly kids</u>.</p> <p><b>ALMOST</b> (gần như): - Dùng như một trạng từ bổ trợ cho động từ, tính từ, danh từ.</p> <p>VD: It was <u>almost midnight</u> when she came home.</p> <p>- Luôn đi với cụm danh từ mở đầu bằng các từ: all, every, no, any.</p> <p>VD: <u>Almost everyone</u> here likes her speech.</p>	
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “MỖI/MỌI”	<b>EACH</b>	<b>EVERY</b>
	<p>- Dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít</p> <p>VD: <u>Each ticket</u> costs 200,000 VND.</p>	<p>- Dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít</p> <p>VD: <u>Each student</u> has a book.</p> <p>- Dùng với danh từ số nhiều khi có số lượng cụ thể.</p> <p>VD: We should have a medical check <u>every six months</u>.</p>
Diễn đạt ý	<b>OTHER</b>	<b>ANOTHER</b>

nghĩa là “CÁI KHÁC/ NGƯỜI KHÁC”	- <b>Other</b> + danh từ đếm được số nhiều/ không đếm được VD: <u>Other students</u> are from Vietnam.	- <b>Another</b> + danh từ đếm được số ít VD: I have eaten my cake, give me <u>another</u> .
	Sự khác nhau giữa <b>OTHER - OTHERS:</b> <b>Others</b> = <b>Other</b> + N/ đại từ VD: Some students like sports, <u>others</u> don't/ <u>other students</u> don't.	Sự khác nhau giữa <b>THE OTHER - THE OTHERS:</b> - The other: cái/ người còn lại trong hai người,... <b>The other</b> + danh từ đếm được số ít VD: I have 3 close friends. Two of whom are teachers. <u>The other (friend)</u> is a doctor. - The others: những cái còn lại/ những người còn lại <b>The others</b> = <b>The other</b> + danh từ đếm được số nhiều VD: I have 3 close friend. One of them is a teacher. <u>The other friends/ the others</u> are doctors.

### 3. Từ chỉ định lượng về đồ ăn

A teaspoon of honey: 1 thìa (nhỏ) mật ong	A bowl of soup: 1 bát súp
A tablespoon of sugar: 1 thìa (lớn) đường	A cup of soda: 1 cốc soda
A pot of jam: 1 hũ mứt	A bottle of wine: 1 chai rượu
A slice of bread: 1 lát bánh mì	A carton of cookies: 1 hộp bánh quy
A piece of cheese: 1 mẫu phô mai	A kilo of rice: 1 cân gạo
A bunch of bananas: 1 nải chuối	A bag of pepper: 1 túi hạt tiêu
A drop of oil: 1 giọt dầu	A pinch of salt: 1 nhúm muối
A glass of beer: 1 ly bia	A head of cabbage: 1 cây bắp cải
A leaf of lettuce: 1 lá rau diếp	A clove of garlic: 1 nhánh tỏi
A stick of cinnamon: 1 thanh/ cây quế	A liter a water: 1 lít nước
A handful of cherry tomatoes: 1 nắm cà chua bi	A loaf of bread: 1 ổ bánh mì
A pitcher of lemonade: 1 bình nước chanh	A tin of sardine: 1 hộp (lon) cá trích

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Điền “a, an, some, any” vào chỗ trống

1. Have you heard \_\_\_\_\_ news about the accident on the main road?
2. It is a pity that I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ camera now.
3. My brother likes \_\_\_\_\_ modern music.
4. I realized that \_\_\_\_\_ strange man was following me.
5. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee?
6. There is \_\_\_\_\_ glimmer of hope that Mary will recover from her illness.

7. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ pets. I wish I had one.
8. I think \_\_\_\_\_ black dress is not suitable for you.
9. Jim has made \_\_\_\_\_ good impression on his new co-workers.
10. It was \_\_\_\_\_ great honor to receive the reward.
11. Mary claimed that she didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ unique talents.
12. I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ more vegetables.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ people find it difficult to learn a foreign language.
14. There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ oranges left in the fridge so we decided to go shopping for \_\_\_\_\_.
15. David doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_ expectations of his future career.

**BT 2. Chọn lượng từ phù hợp cho các câu sau**

1. He doesn't have (**many/ much**) money.
2. I would like (**a few/ a little**) salt on my vegetables.
3. There are (**less/ fewer**) boys than girls in this class.
4. I don't want (**some/ any**) eggs but I want (**some/ any**) cheese.
5. They have given (**a large number of/ a great deal of**) time on training.
6. They went from one shop to (**another/ other**).
7. The mixture looks rather dry. Maybe you should add (**a little/ little**) water.
8. He has two bookstores. One is in Thac Mo. (**The other/ Another**) is in Phuoc Binh.
9. He bought (**much/ many**) furniture for her new apartment which she has bought recently.
10. Peter has spent (**a great deal of/ a large number of**) time and money on stamp collecting.
11. Both men (**was/ were**) interested in this job in the interview yesterday.
12. There are four books on the table. (**Each/ All**) has a different colour.
13. (**Neither/ None**) restaurant is expensive.
14. Did you take (**any/ some**) photographs when you were on holiday?
15. The news has (**many/ plenty of**) important information.
16. He drank (**too many/ too much**) wine last night and gets sick now.
17. (**Most/ Most of**) my students are familiar with this kind of school activities.
18. The Olympic games are held (**every/ many**) four years.
19. He had so (**a lot of/ many**) things to do.
20. With only (**a few/ a little**) hope, Harry didn't know how to keep going another day.

**BT 3. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. There was hardly \_\_\_\_\_ money left in the bank account.  
A. no more                      B. some                      C. no                      D. any
2. She spent \_\_\_\_\_ her free time watching TV.  
A. a few                      B. most of                      C. a lot                      D. most
3. Unfortunately, we've made \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. little progress                      B. a few progresses                      C. little progresses                      D. few progress

4. \_\_\_\_\_ students in our class is 45.  
 A. A large amount of    B. A lot of    C. A number of    D. The number of
5. The two cars for sale were in poor condition, so I didn't buy \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. neither of them    B. either of them    C. each of them    D. none of them
6. If you book in advance, you will \_\_\_\_\_ certainly have a better table at our restaurant.  
 A. mostly    B. almost    C. most    D. the most
7. Our village had \_\_\_\_\_ money available for education that the schools had to close.  
 A. so little    B. such little    C. so much    D. such much
8. \_\_\_\_\_ of transportation has given someone the idea for a new type of toy.  
 A. Mostly forms    B. Most every form    C. Almost every form    D. Almost forms
9. Peter has been studying for almost three years and he will have this degree and return to his country in \_\_\_\_\_ six months.  
 A. others    B. the other    C. other    D. another
10. There is too \_\_\_\_\_ bad news on TV tonight.  
 A. many    B. much    C. a few    D. a little
11. They asked me a lot of questions, \_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't answer.  
 A. much of which    B. both of them    C. neither of which    D. most of which
12. All the boys are good at cooking, but \_\_\_\_\_ is as good as the girls.  
 A. either    B. neither    C. every    D. none
13. I had a red pen but I seem to have lost it; I think I'd better buy \_\_\_\_\_ one.  
 A. the other    B. another    C. others    D. the
14. He bought three shirts; one for him and \_\_\_\_\_ for his children.  
 A. others    B. the other    C. another    D. the others
15. In the United States, \_\_\_\_\_ the states but Hawaii is an island.  
 A. all of    B. neither of    C. none of    D. no of

**BT 4. Hoàn thành câu với các từ chỉ định lượng đồ ăn**

Heads	bowl	glass	kilos	handful
cloves	slice	pitchers	carton	pinch

- My father rarely has a of \_\_\_\_\_ bread for breakfast.
- Would you like a \_\_\_\_\_ of beer?
- We need to buy some \_\_\_\_\_ of rice.
- Jane is making some \_\_\_\_\_ of lemonade for the party.
- Tasked my mother for another \_\_\_\_\_ of soup.
- My grandmother often give me a \_\_\_\_\_ of home-made cookies every week.
- Can you help me crush some \_\_\_\_\_ of garlic?
- You might need more than a \_\_\_\_\_ of cherry tomatoes to make salad.
- Can you go to the supermarket and buy some \_\_\_\_\_ of cabbage?
- A \_\_\_\_\_ of salt is enough . If you put more, the soup will be too salt.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN  
(CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

**1. Công thức**

Loại	Công thức	Cách sử dụng
0	<b>If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), S + V(hiện tại đơn)</b> Ex: If you freeze water, it becomes a solid.	Diễn tả thói quen, sự thật hiển nhiên
1	<b>If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), S + will/ can/ should/ may + V</b> Ex: If the weather is nice, I will go swimming tomorrow.	Diễn tả sự việc xảy ra ở hiện tại, ở tương lai
2	<b>If + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + would/ could/ should/ might + V</b> Ex: If I were you, I would follow her advice.	Diễn tả sự việc không có thật ở hiện tại
3	<b>If + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành), S + would/ could/ should/ might + have + Ved/ V3</b> Ex: If I had studied the lessons, I could have	Diễn tả sự việc không có thật ở quá khứ
Hỗn hợp	<b>If + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành), S + would/ could/ should/ might + V</b> Ex: If she hadn't stayed up late last night, she wouldn't be so tired now.	Diễn tả nguyên nhân, kết quả của 1 sự việc

Lưu ý: *Unless = If .....not*

**2. Viết lại câu**

<b>1. Mệnh đề 1 <u>because</u> Mệnh đề 2 (- +)</b> Ex: I won't go to the cinema because I am sick.	=> <b>If Mệnh đề 2, Mệnh đề 1 (lùi thì) (+ - 2 MĐ)</b> If I weren't sick, I would go to the cinema.
<b>2. Mệnh đề 1 <u>so</u> Mệnh đề 2 (- +)</b> Ex: He studies hard so he will get a high mark.	=> <b>If Mệnh đề 1, Mệnh đề 2 (lùi thì) (+ - 2 MĐ)</b> If he didn't study hard, he wouldn't get a high mark.
<b>3. Mệnh đề 1 <u>or</u> Mệnh đề 2 (- +)</b> Ex: Do your homework or you won't watch TV.	=> <b>If Mệnh đề 1, Mệnh đề 2 (không lùi thì) (+ - 1 trong 2 MĐ, thêm chủ ngữ)</b> If you don't your homework, you won't watch TV.

**3. Câu điều kiện ở dạng đảo:**

- **Đảo ngữ câu điều kiện loại 1: Should + S + (not) + V, S + will + V**

Ex: If I meet him tomorrow, I will give him this letter.

= Should I meet him tomorrow, I will give him this letter

- **Đảo ngữ câu điều kiện loại 2: Were + S + O/ (not) + to + V, S + would + V**

Ex: If I were you, I would buy this house. = Were I you, I would buy this house

If I knew his address, I'd give it to you. = Were I to know his address, I'd give it to you.

- **Đảo ngữ câu điều kiện loại 3: Had + S + (not) + Ved/ V3, S + would have + Ved/ V3**

Ex: If he had driven carefully, the accident wouldn't have happened.

= Had he driven carefully, the accident wouldn't have happened.

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1: Chia động từ trong câu điều kiện loại 0

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (expose) phosphorus to air, it \_\_\_\_\_ (burn).
2. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (heat) ice, it \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) to water.
3. If metal \_\_\_\_\_ (get) hot, it \_\_\_\_\_ (expand).
4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) in the rain, you \_\_\_\_\_ (get) wet.
5. If anyone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring) the bell, don't \_\_\_\_\_ (open) the door.
6. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (multiply) 6 to 8, you \_\_\_\_\_ (get) 48
7. If anyone \_\_\_\_\_ (call), say that I \_\_\_\_\_ (be not) at home.
8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the post office, you \_\_\_\_\_ (mail) this letter for me.
9. David (be) \_\_\_\_\_ sick if he (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ milk.
10. The river (freeze) \_\_\_\_\_ if it (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very cold.

### BT 2: Chia động từ trong câu điều kiện loại 1

- 1) If I (study) \_\_\_\_\_, I (pass) \_\_\_\_\_ the exams.
- 2) If the sun (shine) \_\_\_\_\_, we (walk) \_\_\_\_\_ to the town.
- 3) If he (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a temperature, he (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor.
- 4) If my friends (come) \_\_\_\_\_, I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very happy.
- 5) If she (earn) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money, she (fly) \_\_\_\_\_ to New York.
- 6) If we (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ to London, we (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ the museums.
- 7) If you (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ sandals in the mountains, you (slip) \_\_\_\_\_ on the rocks.
- 8) If Rita (forget) \_\_\_\_\_ her homework, the teacher (give) \_\_\_\_\_ her a low mark.
- 9) If they (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the disco, they (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to loud music.
- 10) If you (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ a minute, I (ask) \_\_\_\_\_ my parents.

### BT 3: Chia động từ trong câu điều kiện loại 2

1. If you (play) \_\_\_\_\_ for lower stakes, you wouldn't lose so much.
2. If you drove your car into the river, \_\_\_\_\_ you (be) \_\_\_\_\_ able to get out?
3. If you (not belong) \_\_\_\_\_ to a union, you couldn't get a job.
4. If I (win) \_\_\_\_\_ a big prize in a lottery, I'd give up my job.
5. What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) \_\_\_\_\_ if you found a burglar in your house?
6. I could tell you what this means if I (know) \_\_\_\_\_ Greek.
7. If everybody (give) \_\_\_\_\_ J1, we would have enough.
8. He might get fat if he (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ smoking.
9. If he knew that it was dangerous, he (not come) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. If you (see) \_\_\_\_\_ someone drowning, what would you do?

### BT 4: Chia động từ trong câu điều kiện loại 3

1. If I had known that you were in hospital, I (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ you.

2. You would have seen my garden at its best if you (be) \_\_\_\_\_ here last week.
3. I shouldn't have believed it if I (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ it with my own eyes.
4. If he had asked you, \_\_\_\_\_ you (accept) \_\_\_\_\_?
5. If he had known the whole story, he (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ so angry.
6. I (offer) \_\_\_\_\_ to help him if I had realized that he was ill.
7. If you had left that wasp alone, it (not sting) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
8. If I (realize) \_\_\_\_\_ what a bad driver you were, I wouldn't have come with you.
9. If I had realized that the traffic lights were red, I (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. But for the fog, we (reach) \_\_\_\_\_ our destination ages ago.

**BT 5. Chia động từ trong câu điều kiện hỗn hợp**

1. She (get) \_\_\_\_\_ angry if you had told her.
2. If they (support) \_\_\_\_\_ our product when we asked them, they would get a discount now.
3. If you (have) \_\_\_\_\_ something to eat in the morning, you wouldn't feel sick now.
4. I wouldn't risk it if I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
5. The chicken isn't very good. It (taste) \_\_\_\_\_ better if you had put some spices on it.
6. If the hotel in Paris had been full, we somewhere else (stay) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. How would you explain the meaning of this word if you (not know) \_\_\_\_\_ it?
8. We (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ angry if you had refused the dinner.
9. If I (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ in a hurry when I got up, I wouldn't catch the train.
10. She would get fat if she (not stop) \_\_\_\_\_ eating.

**BT 6. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. I would have visited you before if there \_\_\_\_\_ quite a lot of people in your house.  
A. hadn't                                      B. hadn't been                                      C. wouldn't be                                      D. wasn't
2. If you had caught the bus, you \_\_\_\_\_ late for work.  
A. wouldn't have been                      B. would have been                      C. wouldn't be                      D. would be
3. If I \_\_\_\_\_, I would express my feelings.  
A. were asked                                      B. would ask                                      C. had been asked                                      D. asked
4. If \_\_\_\_\_ as I told her, she would have succeeded.  
A. she has done                                      B. she had done                                      C. she does                                      D. she did
5. Will you be angry if I \_\_\_\_\_ your pocket dictionary?  
A. stole                                      B. have stolen                                      C. were to steal                                      D. steal
6. You made a mistake by telling her a lie. It \_\_\_\_\_ better if you \_\_\_\_\_ to her.  
A. would have been/ hadn't lied                                      B. would be/ didn't lie  
C. will be/ don't lie                                      D. would be/ hadn't lied
7. John would be taking a great risk if he \_\_\_\_\_ his money in that business.  
A. would invest                                      B. invested                                      C. had invested                                      D. invests
8. She wouldn't have given them all that money if we \_\_\_\_\_ her to.

- A. wouldn't advise      B. won't advise      C. hadn't advised      D. didn't advise
9. If the tree hadn't been so high, he \_\_\_\_\_ it up to take his kite down.  
A. could have climbed      B. climb      C. is climbing      D. climbed
10. If the wall weren't so high, he \_\_\_\_\_ it up to take his ball down.  
A. climbed      B. could climb      C. is climbing      D. climb
11. If I \_\_\_\_\_ her phone number, I \_\_\_\_\_ her last night  
A. had known/ could have phoned      B. knew/ would have phoned  
C. know/ can phone      D. knew/ could phone
12. If he \_\_\_\_\_ the truth, the police wouldn't arrest him.  
A. tells      B. told      C. had told      D. would tell
13. If you press that button, what \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. would happen      B. would have happened      C. will happen      D. happen
14. She says if she had realized that the traffic lights were red, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. would have stopped      B. could stop      C. stopped      D. would stop
15. I am very thin. I think, if I \_\_\_\_\_ smoking, I might get fat.  
A. stop      B. had stopped      C. will stop      D. stopped
16. If I \_\_\_\_\_ that yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
A. had discovered/ would inform      B. had discovered/ would have informed  
C. had discovered/ could inform      D. discovered/ can inform
17. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to the course regularly, they \_\_\_\_\_ a certificate last year.  
A. go/ gave      B. had gone/ would have given  
C. go/ give      D. went/ would give
18. If he \_\_\_\_\_ the lesson yesterday, he could do the test better today.  
A. has reviewed      B. had reviewed      C. will review      D. reviewed
19. If I \_\_\_\_\_ in London now, I could visit British Museum.  
A. were      B. had been      C. have been      D. would be
20. If it had not rained last night, the roads in the city \_\_\_\_\_ so slippery now.  
A. would not be      B. must not be  
C. could not have been      D. would not have been

**BT 7: Viết lại các câu sau sử dụng câu điều kiện**

1. He can't go out because he has to study for his exam.

=> If \_\_\_\_\_

2. I can't play football this afternoon because I felt tired.

=> If \_\_\_\_\_

3. She can't be employed because she doesn't have a college degree.

=> If \_\_\_\_\_

4. We put off our trip because the weather was terrible.

- => If \_\_\_\_\_
5. She is lazy so she can't pass the exam.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
6. He smokes too much; that's why he can't get rid of his cough.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
7. She walked to the meeting. She was late.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
8. I didn't eat lunch, I feel hungry now.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
9. Don't tell lies to your boss or you'll be fired at once.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
10. Don't be impatient or you will make mistakes.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
11. Study hard or you won't pass the exam.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
12. You must tell me the whole truth or I won't help you.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
13. Unless you promise to return back, I won't lend you.  
=> If \_\_\_\_\_
14. If you do not like this one, I'll bring you another.  
=> Unless \_\_\_\_\_
15. I only come if they invite me.  
=> Unless \_\_\_\_\_

**BT 8. Viết lại các câu điều kiện sau ở dạng đảo ngữ**

1. If you need some more money, take an extra 200.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. If I were your father, I would insist you practice harder.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. If my girlfriend calls, please let me know right away.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. If I had thought of the right words, I would have told them what I was thinking!  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. If I were a rich kid, I would not have to worry about anything.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. If they run out of tickets, we will have to go to another theater.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. If you change your mind, let us know.  
\_\_\_\_\_

---

8. If you had known my mom, you would have thought she was crazy too.

---

9. If you had heard her singing, you would have laughed too.

---

10. If I were a celebrity, I could buy any bag I want.

---

11. If you were to change your mind, I would be most grateful.

---

12. If she decides to come, please telephone.

---

13. If he had understood the problem, he wouldn't have committed those mistakes.

---

14. If I had known about those problems, I would never have moved here.

---

15. If he had not resigned, we would have been obliged to give him the sack.

---

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: MẠO TỪ  
(ARTICLES)**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

<b>Mạo từ</b>	<b>Cách dùng</b>	<b>Không dùng</b>
<b>Không xác định (A/ An)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A: trước danh từ danh từ đếm được số ít, để chỉ 1 người / vật được nhắc tới lần đầu, chung chung <i>Ex: a boy, a class</i></li> <li>An: trước danh từ danh từ đếm được số ít, để chỉ 1 người / vật được nhắc tới lần đầu bằng các nguyên âm: <b>u, e, o, a, i</b> <i>Ex: an apple, an umbrella</i></li> <li>A/ An đứng trước danh từ chỉ nghề nghiệp <i>Ex: a doctor, a farmer</i></li> <li>A/ An dùng trong các cụm từ chỉ số lượng: a few, a little, a lot of, a plenty of, a great deal of, a number, a piece of <i>Ex: a little money, a number of students,</i></li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Không dùng mạo từ trước tháng, thứ, mùa, dịp đặc biệt của năm <i>Ex: in May, on Thursday, in spring, at Christmas</i></li> <li>Trước các bữa ăn (trừ khi có tính từ đứng trước) <i>Ex: - We have breakfast at 8.00. - He gave us a good breakfast.</i></li> <li>Trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều hoặc không đếm được với nghĩa chung chung <i>Ex: Elephants are interesting animals.</i></li> </ol>
<b>Xác định (The)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dùng trước danh từ chỉ người/ vật đã xác định cụ thể hoặc đã đề cập trước đó <i>Ex: His car struck <u>a</u> tree. You can still see the mark on <u>the</u> tree.</i></li> <li>Trước danh từ chỉ sự duy nhất <i>Ex: the Earth, the Sun, the moon</i></li> <li>Đứng trước tính từ, trạng từ trong so sánh nhất <i>Ex: the first, the second, the only, the best</i></li> <li>Đứng trước tính từ chỉ một nhóm người, một tầng lớp trong xã hội <i>Ex: the old, the rich, the poor</i></li> <li>Đứng trước tên các quốc gia có từ “Republic, State, Kingdom, Union” hoặc tên các quốc gia ở số nhiều <i>Ex: The United States, The Philipines, The Dominican Republic</i></li> <li>Trước những từ có <b>of</b> theo sau <i>Ex: the university of London</i></li> <li>Dùng trước những danh từ riêng chỉ biển, sông, quần đảo, dãy núi, tên gọi số nhiều của các nước, sa mạc, miền <i>Ex: The Pacific, The Netherlands</i></li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Trước các danh từ trừu tượng <i>Ex: happiness, freedom</i></li> <li>Trước các môn thể thao, môn học <i>Ex: I like playing table tennis.</i></li> <li>Không dùng mạo từ với hầu hết tên người hoặc tên địa điểm <i>Ex: France, Vietnam, New York, Africa</i></li> <li>Không dùng mạo từ với các khu vực hồ, núi, đồi, đảo <i>Ex: Mount Everest, Lake Michigan, Morth Hill</i></li> </ol>

**II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**BT 1. Khoanh vào đáp án đúng**

- Please turn off \_\_\_\_\_ air-conditioner when you leave \_\_\_\_\_ room.  
A. the – the                      B. a - the                      C. a - a                      D. the – a
- Jim hasn't found \_\_\_\_\_ place to \_\_\_\_\_ night.

- A. the - the                  B. a - the                  C. a - a                  D. the - a
3. Can you show me \_\_\_\_\_ way to \_\_\_\_\_ post office please?  
A. the - the                  B. a - the                  C. a - a                  D. the - a
4. Mr. Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ old customer of my store and he is also \_\_\_\_\_ man.  
A. the - the                  B. a - an                  C. an - a                  D. the - a
5. My brother has bought me \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful dress as a birthday present.  
A. the                  B. a                  C. an                  D. Ø
6. Jim is \_\_\_\_\_ youngest boy of the family and this year he will go to \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
A. the - Ø                  B. a - a                  C. a - the                  D. the - a
7. There is a huge gap between \_\_\_\_\_ rich and \_\_\_\_\_ poor in this country.  
A. the - the                  B. a - an                  C. a - the                  D. the - a
8. Peter was in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital and yesterday we went to \_\_\_\_\_ hospital to visit him.  
A. the - Ø                  B. the - the                  C. Ø- the                  D. the - a
9. My sister told me that she had met her old teacher \_\_\_\_\_ day before.  
A. the                  B. a                  C. an                  D. Ø
10. Have you ever gone to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to visit him?  
A. the                  B. a                  C. an                  D. Ø
11. I didn't think it was \_\_\_\_\_ expensive restaurant until I checked the menu.  
A. the                  B. a                  C. an                  D. Ø
12. Yesterday my teacher told us \_\_\_\_\_ story about \_\_\_\_\_ English writer.  
A. the - the                  B. a - an                  C. a - the                  D. the - a
13. Unlike other girls, Mary doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ parties and \_\_\_\_\_ cosmetics.  
A. the - the                  B. the - Ø                  C. Ø - the                  D. Ø - Ø
14. Last year I visited \_\_\_\_\_ village in the Northern part of Vietnam. \_\_\_\_\_ locals were very friendly.  
A. the - the                  B. a - an                  C. a - the                  D. the - Ø
15. Job hunters always seek for people with \_\_\_\_\_ experience  
A. the                  B. a                  C. an                  D. Ø

**BT 2. Điền các mạo từ a, an, the hoặc Ø vào chỗ trống**

1. My sister often goes to \_\_\_\_\_ church by \_\_\_\_\_ bus.
2. Mel's mother is in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital, so we went to visit her last night.
3. Rita is studying \_\_\_\_\_ English and \_\_\_\_\_ Maths this semester.
4. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ man who is waiting for the bus over there?
5. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ cup of \_\_\_\_\_ coffee with \_\_\_\_\_ cream and \_\_\_\_\_ sugar.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ big books which are on \_\_\_\_\_ table are for my history class.
7. My \_\_\_\_\_ car is four years old, and it still runs well.
8. There are only \_\_\_\_\_ few seats for tonight's musical.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ chair that you are sitting in is broken.
10. The Civil War was fought in \_\_\_\_\_ United States between 1861 and 1865.
11. We went by \_\_\_\_\_ train to the west of England.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ people who live in \_\_\_\_\_ Scotland are called the Scots.
13. This house is very nice. Has it got \_\_\_\_\_ garden?
14. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ airport near where I live. \_\_\_\_\_ nearest airport is 70 miles away.

15. \_\_\_\_\_ deaf are unable to hear anything.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ tea is produced in Thai Nguyen.
17. I wish today were on \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.
18. I often have \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 6:00 pm and \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at 11:00 pm.
19. \_\_\_\_\_ Smiths are going to Halong Bay next summer.
20. If I won the lottery, first I would buy \_\_\_\_\_ piece of land in the country.
21. This morning I bought a newspaper and \_\_\_\_\_ magazine. \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper is in my bag but I don't know where I put \_\_\_\_\_ magazine.
22. Maria comes from \_\_\_\_\_ United States. She is \_\_\_\_\_ American girl.
23. The boy said: " \_\_\_\_\_ Moon is bigger than \_\_\_\_\_ Earth."
24. On our trip to \_\_\_\_\_ Spain, we crossed \_\_\_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean.
25. Rita plays \_\_\_\_\_ violin and her sister plays \_\_\_\_\_ guitar.
26. \_\_\_\_\_ farmers who are working hard on their land almost get nothing for their lifetime.
27. When do you hope to go to \_\_\_\_\_ university?
28. He is \_\_\_\_\_ one-eyed man.
29. There is \_\_\_\_\_ useful method of learning English.
30. She is \_\_\_\_\_ nurse, so her work is to take care of \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
31. Summer is \_\_\_\_\_ warmest season but \_\_\_\_\_ summer of 1971 was unusually cool.
32. \_\_\_\_\_ blind are \_\_\_\_\_ people who can't see anything.
33. There is \_\_\_\_\_ onion left in the fridge.
34. My hometown is on the bank of \_\_\_\_\_ Hong river.
35. There are billions of stars in \_\_\_\_\_ space.
36. Did you watch "Titanic" on \_\_\_\_\_ television or at \_\_\_\_\_ cinema?
37. After \_\_\_\_\_ lunch, we went for a walk by \_\_\_\_\_ sea.
38. Peru is \_\_\_\_\_ country in South America. \_\_\_\_\_ capital is Lima.
39. Life is not so easy for \_\_\_\_\_ unemployed.
40. A man and a woman were standing outside my house. \_\_\_\_\_ man looked English but I think \_\_\_\_\_ woman was foreign.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 15: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ  
(RELATIVE CLAUSES)**

**A. LÝ THUYẾT**

**I. CÁC DẠNG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ**

<b>Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định</b>	<b>Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Dùng để xác định danh từ đứng trước nó.</li> <li>- Mệnh đề xác định là mệnh đề cần thiết cho ý nghĩa của câu, không có nó câu sẽ không đủ nghĩa.</li> <li>⇒ Không thể bỏ đi đc</li> <li>- Không có dấu (,)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Cung cấp thêm thông tin về 1 người/ vật</li> <li>-Có thể bỏ đi đc</li> <li>-Có dấu (,)</li> <li>-MĐQHKKXĐ dùng khi:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là 1 danh từ riêng (tên riêng, tên địa danh) Ex: <i>Ha Noi, which is a capital of Vietnam, is crowded and modern.</i></li> <li>+ Danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là 1 tính từ sở hữu (my/ his/ her/ their/ your/...) Ex: <i>My cat, which I found on the street, is called Monty.</i></li> <li>+ Danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là danh từ đi với this/ that/ these/ those Ex: <i>This ring, which was a present from my husband, is very valuable.</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>- Không dùng "that"</li> </ul>

**II. CÁC ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ**

**1. WHO:**

- thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người.....
- **Cấu trúc:** N (person) + WHO + V + O  
N (person) + WHO + S + V
- **Ví dụ:** I told you about the woman who lives next door.  
I live the man who Mary loves.

**2. WHOM:**

- thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người
- **Cấu trúc:** .....N (person) + WHOM + S + V
- **Ví dụ:** I was invited by the professor whom I met at the conference.

**3. WHICH:**

- thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật
- **Cấu trúc:**  
....N (thing) + WHICH + V + O  
....N (thing) + WHICH + S + V
- **Ví dụ:**  
+ Do you see the cat which is lying on the roof?  
+ The dress which she is wearing is beautiful.

**4. THAT:**

- có thể thay thế cho vị trí của who, whom, which trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định
- \* **Các trường hợp thường dùng "that":**
  - khi đi sau các hình thức so sánh nhất
  - khi đi sau các từ: only, the first, the last
  - khi danh từ đi trước bao gồm cả người và vật

- khi đi sau các đại từ bất định, đại từ phủ định, đại từ chỉ số lượng: no one, nobody, nothing, anyone, anything, anybody, someone, something, somebody, all, some, any, little, none.

**Ví dụ:**

- + He was the most interesting person that I have ever met.
- + It was the first time that I heard of it.
- + These books are all that my sister left me. 0983672757
- + She talked about the people and places that she had visited.

**\* Các trường hợp không dùng that:**

- trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định ( có dấu (,))
- sau giới từ

**5. WHOSE:**

- dùng để chỉ sở hữu cho danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật, thường thay cho các từ: her, his, their, hoặc hình thức 's
- **Cấu trúc**....N (person, thing) + WHOSE + N + V ....
- **Ví dụ:** Do you know the boy whose mother is a nurse?

### III. CÁC TRẠNG TỪ QUAN HỆ

**1. WHY:** mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ chỉ lý do, thường thay cho cụm for the reason, for that reason

- **Cấu trúc:** .....N (reason) + WHY + S + V ...

**Ví dụ:** I don't know the reason. You didn't go to school for that reason.

→ I don't know the reason why you didn't go to school.

**2. WHERE:** thay thế từ chỉ nơi chốn, thường thay cho there

- **Cấu trúc:** ....N (place) + WHERE + S + V ....

(WHERE = ON / IN / AT + WHICH)

**Ví dụ:** The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed that hotel.

→ The hotel where we stayed wasn't very clean.

→ The hotel at which we stayed wasn't very clean.

**3. WHEN:** thay thế từ chỉ thời gian, thường thay cho từ then

**Cấu trúc:** ....N (time) + WHEN + S + V ...

(WHEN = ON / IN / AT + WHICH)

**Ví dụ:** Do you still remember the day? We first met on that day.

→ Do you still remember the day when we first met?

→ Do you still remember the day on which we first met?

### IV. MỘT SỐ LƯU Ý

**1. Nếu trong mệnh đề quan hệ có giới từ thì giới từ có thể đặt trước hoặc sau mệnh đề quan hệ (chỉ áp dụng với whom và which.)**

Ex: Mr. Brown is a nice teacher. We studied with him last year.

→ Mr. Brown, with whom we studied last year, is a nice teacher.

→ Mr. Brown, whom we studied with last year, is a nice teacher.

## 2. Có thể dùng **which** thay cho cả mệnh đề đứng trước.

Ex: She can't come to my birthday party. That makes me sad.

→ She can't come to my birthday party, which makes me sad.

## 3. Ở vị trí túc từ, **whom** có thể được thay bằng **who**.

Ex: I'd like to talk to the man whom / who I met at your birthday party.

## 4. Trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, chúng ta có thể bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm túc từ: **whom, which**.

Ex: The girl you met yesterday is my close friend.

The book you lent me was very interesting.

## 5. Các cụm từ chỉ số lượng **some of, both of, all of, neither of, many of, none of ...** có thể được dùng trước **whom, which** và **whose**.

Ex: I have two sisters, both of whom are students.

She tried on three dresses, none of which fitted her.

## V. MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ RÚT GỌN

### 1. Chủ động: Nếu MĐQH là MĐ chủ động thì rút thành cụm hiện tại phân từ (V-ing).

Ex: - The man who stands/ stood at the door is my uncle.

=> The man standing at the door is my uncle.

### 2. Bị động: Ta có thể dùng past participle (V3/Ved) để thay thế cho MĐQH khi nó mang nghĩa bị động

Ex: - The woman who was given a flower looked very happy

=> The woman given a flower looked very happy.

### 3. Rút thành cụm động từ nguyên mẫu

Mệnh đề quan hệ được rút thành cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (To-infinitive) khi trước đại từ quan hệ có các cụm từ: *the first, the second, the last, the only* hoặc hình thức *so sánh bậc nhất*. Ex:

**a. Active:** - The first student who comes to class has to clean the board.

The first student to come to class has to clean the board.

**b. Passive:** - The only room which was painted yesterday was Mary's.

The only room to be painted yesterday was Mary's.

## B. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Viết các đại từ quan hệ **Who, Whom, Whose, Which, That, Where...** vào chỗ trống

1. The men .....lives next-door are English.
2. Do you know the girls .....are standing outside the church?
3. The chocolate .....you like comes from the United States.
4. A burglar is someone .....breaks into a house and steals things.
5. I can't find the key .....opens this door.
6. I don't like the boy .....Sue is going out with.

7. The man .....she is going to marry is very rich.
8. He wore a mask .....made him look like Mickey Mouse.
9. The man .....mobile was ringing did not know what to do.
10. The woman .....daughter was crying tried to calm her down.
11. The family .....car was stolen last week is the Smiths.
12. A bus is a big car .....carries lots of people.
13. Children .....like music are often good at mathematics.
14. The girl .....recited the poem is my niece.
15. The Pacific Ocean, .....might have been crossed by raft during the Stone Age, is the world's largest ocean.
16. The parents thanked the woman.....had saved their son.
17. Two men, neither of .....I had been before, came into my office.
18. He ate the food .....no one else wanted.
19. The village ..... I ran out of petrol didn't have a petrol station
20. John sold his computer, ..... he no longer need, to his cousin.
21. The cowboy .....is wearing a red shirt looks very funny.
22. The volunteers, .....enthusiasm was obvious, finished the work quickly.
23. The newspaper to .....we subscribe is delivered regularly.
24. The job for ..... she has applied is in London.
25. Teddy has two cars, one of ..... is very expensive.

### **BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. Mr. Ken, \_\_\_\_\_ is living next door, is a dentist.  
A. that            B. who            C. whom            D. what
2. Her computer \_\_\_\_\_ was my friend's got broke.  
A. which            B. whom            C. who            D. that
3. The man \_\_\_\_\_ she wanted to see her family.  
A. which            B. where            C. whom            D. who
4. Her grandmother, \_\_\_\_\_ is 70, often takes exercise.  
A. what            B. who            C. where            D. which
5. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ came here two days ago is her professor.  
A. who            B. that            C. whom            D. what
6. The really happy people are those \_\_\_\_\_ enjoy their daily work.  
A. what            B. who            C. which            D. where
7. Freedom is something for \_\_\_\_\_ millions have given their lives.  
A. which            B. where            C. whom            D. who
8. My girlfriend loves tokbokki, \_\_\_\_\_ is Korean food.  
A. which            B. where            C. whom            D. who
9. Blair has passed the exam last week, \_\_\_\_\_ is great news.  
A. who            B. that            C. which            D. whom
10. The book \_\_\_\_\_ is in the car is his brother's.  
A. who            B. that            C. which            D. whom

11. The man \_\_\_\_\_ lives behind my house is a doctor.  
A. that                      B. who                      C. which                      D. whom
12. Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ I played video games with on the weekend, was younger than me.  
A.that                      B. who                      C. which                      D. whom
13. The old building \_\_\_\_\_ is in front of my house fell down.  
A. of which                      B. which                      C. whose                      D. whom
14. We'll come in July \_\_\_\_\_ the schools are on holiday.  
A. that                      B. where                      C. which                      D. when
15. The film about \_\_\_\_\_ they are talking about is fantastic.  
A. who                      B. which                      C. whom                      D. that
16. He is the boy \_\_\_\_\_ is my best friend.  
A. that                      B. whom                      C. who                      D. A& C
17. I'll see you near the post office \_\_\_\_\_ we met the other day.  
A. which                      B. where                      C. when                      D. why
18. He is the boy \_\_\_\_\_ is my best friend.  
A. that                      B. whom                      C. who                      D. A& C
19. I met a lot of new people at the party \_\_\_\_\_ names I can't remember.  
A. whose                      B. which                      C. who                      D. whom
20. Tell me the reason \_\_\_\_\_ you were absent yesterday.  
A. where                      B. when                      C. why                      D. that
21. February, which is the second month of the year, is the month \_\_\_\_\_ many of my colleagues take vacation for skiing.  
A. which                      B. when                      C. in which                      D. where
22. The dress \_\_\_\_\_ the movie star is wearing weighs about fifty pounds.  
A. whom                      B. that                      C. why                      D. which
23. Playing fetch, our dogs, ran after the tennis ball \_\_\_\_\_ bounced across the kitchen floor.  
A. that                      B. whose                      C. which                      D. who
24. The old words you see on the board, most \_\_\_\_\_ were becoming obsolete, are now trending again.  
A. where                      B. of which                      C. at which                      D. that
25. The family \_\_\_\_\_ house was decorated the most beautifully for the holidays will receive a trophy.  
A. which                      B. whose                      C. whom                      D. why

**BT 3: Viết lại các câu dưới đây để tạo thành câu có chứa đại từ quan hệ**

1. The man is her father. You met him last week.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
2. Zoe likes the blue T-shirt. My sister is wearing it.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
3. Show me the new hats. You bought them last night.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
4. That is a company. It produces rings.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
5. The children were attracted by the show. It was performed so many.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
6. My best friend can compose songs. Ly sings folk songs very well.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
7. Tet is a festival. Tet often happens in late January or early February.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

8. Zoe bought a new phone yesterday. I can use it to send and receive messages.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

9. Jack is the boy. He is giving my mom a gift.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

10. We employed the lawyer. Julie recommended the lawyer.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

11. Zoe has a sister. Her sister's name is Juma.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

12. The fruit is on the table. I bought the fruit.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

11. The wallet belongs to John. Lucy found the wallet in the garden.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

14. The food was delicious. David cooked the food.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

15. The car was stolen. My father gave me the car.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

**BT 4: Dùng giới từ đặt trước đại từ quan hệ**

1. She is a woman. I told you about her.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

2. I'll give you an address. You should write to it.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

3. The picture is beautiful. She was looking at it.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

4. The movie is fantastic. They are talking about it.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

5. The song was interesting. We listened to it last night.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

**BT 5. Viết lại câu mệnh đề quan hệ rút gọn**

1. The man who is standing there is a clown.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

2. The envelop which lies on the table has no stamp on it.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

3. My grandmother, who is old and sick, never goes out of the house.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

4. The student don't know how to do exercise which were given by the teacher yesterday.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

5. The diagrams which were made by young Faraday were sent to Sir Humphry Davy at the end of 1812.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

6. You are the last person who saw her alive.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

7. The pilot was the only one who survived the air crash.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

8. All students who don't hand in their papers will fail in the exam.

- \_\_\_\_\_
9. I saw many houses that were destroyed by the storm.
- \_\_\_\_\_
10. He was the second man who was killed in this way.
- \_\_\_\_\_
11. Neil Armstrong was the first man who walked on the moon.
- \_\_\_\_\_
12. The system which is used here is very successful.
- \_\_\_\_\_
13. John, who teaches my son, is my neighbor.
- \_\_\_\_\_
14. He simply loves parties. He is always the first who comes and the last who goes.
- \_\_\_\_\_
15. The Queen Elizabeth is the largest ship which has been built on the Clyde.
- \_\_\_\_\_

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 16: CÁCH SỬ DỤNG CỦA DESPITE VÀ  
ALTHOUGH**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

**1. Cách dùng**

	<b>Although/ Even though/ Though</b>	<b>Despite/ In spite of</b>
Cách sử dụng	Although/ Even though/ + mệnh đề (S + V) Though	Despite/ + động từ đuôi ing In spite of + danh từ + cụm danh từ + (a/an/ the + tính từ + danh từ My/ his/ her + danh từ)
Ví dụ	<u>Although it rained a lot</u> , I enjoyed the holiday.	- <u>Despite being the oldest player</u> , he scored three goals. - <u>In spite of my warning</u> , she went to Paris.

## 2. Cách chuyển Although sang Despite/ In spite of

### **1\* Although + S1 + V1, S1 + V2 (cùng chủ ngữ)**

=> **Despite/ In spite of + V- ing, S1 + V2**

Ex: Although he is a millionaire, he drives a second-hand car.

=> Despite being a millionaire, he drives a second-hand car.

### **2\* Although + The + N + tobe + adj, S2 + V2 (khác chủ ngữ)**

=> **Despite/ In spite of + the + adj + N, S2 + V2**

Ex: Although the weather is bad, Mary goes skating.

=> In spite of the bad weather, Mary goes skating.

### **3\* Although + S1 + tobe + adj, S2 + V2**

=> **Despite/ In spite of + His/ her/ their + N, S2 + V2**

Ex: Although Mai was sick, she went to school.

=> Despite Mai's sickness/ her sickness, she went to school.

**Lưu ý: Chúng ta chỉ biến đổi mệnh đề đi kèm ngay sau Although/ Though/ Eventhough sang cách dùng của In spite of/ Despite. Mệnh đề còn lại ta vẫn giữ nguyên.**

**Một số tính từ chuyển sang danh từ hay gặp:**

Tính từ	Danh từ
ill/ sick: ốm	illness/ sickness
happy	happiness
noisy: ồn ào	noise
difficult: khó khăn	difficulty

## 3. Lưu ý

- “Although” và “but” không đi với nhau. Nếu dùng “Although” thì không dùng “But” mà dùng “But” thì thôi “Although”  
VD: *She was ill, but she went out.* = *Although she was ill, she went out.*
- Despite/ in spite of the fact that + SV = Although/ Even though/ Though + SV  
VD: *I like living in my apartment despite the fact that it is noisy.*  
= *I like living in my apartment although it is noisy.*
- Nếu trong câu có tính từ hay trạng từ, ta có thể dùng như sau:  
Adj/ adv + as/ though + SV = Although/ Even though/ Though + SV  
VD: *Tired as I was, I couldn't sleep.* = *Though I was tired, I couldn't sleep.*

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

**BT 1: Điền vào chỗ trống Although/ Despite/ In spite of sao cho thích hợp**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ although \_\_\_\_\_ we are a small company, we sell almost a hundred machines a month.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ despite \_\_\_\_\_ all the difficulties, the project started on time and was a success.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Although \_\_\_\_\_ we were warned against doing so, we went ahead with the project.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Despite \_\_\_\_\_ his lack of experience, he became a successful businessman.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ being by far the oldest player, he scored three goals.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ he's a millionaire, he drives a second - hand car.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ it rained a lot, I enjoyed the holiday.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ working for the company for six months now, he never seems to know what to do.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ my warnings, he went to Colombia.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ she didn't want to see The Lord of the Rings, she enjoyed it in the end.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ being bad at pool, she beat him three times in a row.
12. She decided to go abroad for a year \_\_\_\_\_ loving her boyfriend very much.
13. He went on holiday to Thailand \_\_\_\_\_ the expensive airfare.
14. I phoned my brother in Thailand using Skype nearly every day \_\_\_\_\_ the time difference.
15. The best things in life are free, \_\_\_\_\_ love is often very expensive.

## BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng

1. \_\_\_\_\_ he likes chocolate, he tries not to eat it.  
A. As                                      B. Though                                      C. Since                                      D. Despite
2. \_\_\_\_\_ he had enough money, he refused to buy a new car.  
A. In spite                                      B. In spite of                                      C. Despite                                      D. Although
3. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.  
A. Despite being tired                                      B. Although to be tired  
C. In spite being tired                                      D. Despite tired
4. \_\_\_\_\_ her lack of hard work, she was promoted.  
A. Because                                      B. Even though                                      C. In spite of                                      D. Despite of
5. She loved him, \_\_\_\_\_ she left him.  
A. even if                                      B. even though                                      C. in spite of                                      D. but
6. I could not eat \_\_\_\_\_ I was very hungry.  
A. even though                                      B. in spite                                      C. in spite the fact that                                      D. despite
7. In spite \_\_\_\_\_, the baseball game was not cancelled.  
A. of the rain                                      B. it was raining                                      C. there was a rain                                      D. the rain
8. \_\_\_\_\_ he had enough money, he refused to buy a new car.  
A. In spite                                      B. In spite of                                      C. Despite                                      D. Although
9. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.  
A. Despite being tired                                      B. Although to be tired                                      C. In spite being tired                                      D. Despite tired
10. The children slept well, despite \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it was noise                                      B. the noise                                      C. of the noise                                      D. noisy
11. She left him \_\_\_\_\_ she still loved him.

- A. even if                      B. even though                      C. in spite of                      D. despite
12. \_\_\_\_\_ her lack of hard work, she was promoted.
- A. In spite                      B. Even though                      C. in spite of                      D. despite of
13. \_\_\_\_\_ they are brothers, they do not look like.
- A. Although                      B. Even                      C. Despite                      D. In spite of
14. We managed to do it \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that he was not there.
- A. as                      B. despite                      C. even though                      D. however
15. Cold \_\_\_\_\_ it was quite, she wasn't wearing a coat.
- A. despite                      B. even though                      C. as                      D. but
16. *Mr. Ba was late for the meeting though he took a taxi.*
- A. Even though taking a taxi, Mr. Ba was late for the meeting.
- B. In spite of taking a taxi, but Mr. Ba was late for the meeting.
- C. Mr. Ba was late for the meeting despite the fact he took a taxi.
- D. Mr. Ba was late for the meeting although having taken a taxi.
17. *We came to the meeting on time though the traffic was heavy.*
- A. Despite the traffic was heavy; we came to the meeting on time.
- B. In spite of the heavy traffic, we came to the meeting on time.
- C. Even though the heavy traffic, we came to the meeting on time.
- D. Although the traffic was heavy, but we came to the meeting on time.
18. *Although he took a taxi, Bill still arrived late for the concert.*
- A. Bill arrived late for the concert whether he took a taxi or not.
- B. Bill arrived late for the concert because of the taxi.
- C. In spite of taking a taxi, Bill arrived late for the concert.
- D. Bill took a taxi to the concert, but he couldn't catch it.
19. *Although she is rich, she can't afford to buy the car.*
- A. She doesn't have enough money to buy the car she likes.
- B. Rich as she is, she can't afford to buy the car.
- C. The car is too expensive for her to buy.
- D. She wants to buy the car but it costs a lot.
20. *Although Sue felt tired, she stayed up late talking to Jill.*
- A. Despite feeling tired, Sue stayed up late talking to Jill.
- B. In spite feeling tired, Sue stayed up late talking to Jill.
- C. Sue wouldn't feel tired despite staying up late talking to Jill.
- D. Sue stayed up late talking to Jill. As a result, she was tired.

**BT 3. Chuyển các câu dưới đây sử dụng các từ cho sẵn**

1. Even though Sherry had excellent grades, she wasn't admitted to the university. (despite)  
 ⇒ .....

2. The firefighters rescued the dog in the house although it was very dangerous. (despite)  
⇒ .....
3. Though the weather was very cold, we went swimming last week. (in spite of)  
⇒ .....
4. Even though the work was very hard, we enjoyed doing that job. (in spite of)  
⇒ .....
5. Although Jane has very little money, she is happy. (despite)  
⇒ .....
6. In spite of her injured foot, she managed to walk to the village. (although)  
⇒ .....
7. Despite the low salary, I decided to accept the job. (even though)  
⇒ .....
8. In spite of being the better team, we lost the match. (though)  
⇒ .....
9. Despite not having eaten for 24 hours, I didn't feel hungry. (even though)  
⇒ .....
10. Despite the bad weather, they went out for a walk. (although)  
⇒ .....
11. Even though his health is poor, he attends office regularly. (despite the fact that)  
⇒ .....
12. Although Peter practises hard, he can't pass the driving test. (but)  
⇒ .....
13. She has plenty of money, but she is very mean. (although)  
⇒ .....
14. In spite of the fact that his vision is poor, he reads books. (in spite of)  
⇒ .....
15. Although Mr John is famous, he's very humble. (as)  
⇒ .....

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17: DẠNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ (FORMS OF VERB)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### 1. Động từ nguyên thể (V inf)

- Sau Model verbs như: can, may, must, will, shall, would, should, would rather, had better,...
- Trong cấu trúc với V là: make, let, have
- Trong cấu trúc với V là động từ tri giác: see, hear, notice, feel,...

#### 2. Động từ thêm ing (V-ing)

- Sau một số động từ như: avoid, enjoy/ like/ love, dislike, start/ begin, stop/ finish, keep, mind, practise, delay, deny, consider, quit, imagine, involve, discuss, miss, mind.....
- Sau các cụm động từ: to be used to, to get accustomed, to look forward to, to have a good time/ difficulty, to be busy, to be worth,...
- Trong cấu trúc với V là động từ tri giác biểu đạt hành động đang tiếp diễn
- Sau các giới từ như: about, of, with, without,...

Ex: I enjoy fishing. / Alice is *fond of* dancing.

#### 3. Động từ có To (To V)

- Sau các V thường: want, intend, decide, expect, hope, mean, offer, promise, refuse, wish,....
- Sau các tính từ: glad, happy, ready, kind, ...
- Sau các phó từ: enough, too

Ex: I want to buy a new house. / I'm *glad to pass* the exam.

#### 4. Ving/ To V không khác nghĩa:

Một số V theo sau V-ing hay To V mà ý nghĩa không đổi

**Like, love, hate, prefer, intend (dự định), begin, start, continue, stop, bother (làm phiền)**

Ex: He *began to laugh*. = He *began laughing*.

#### 5. Ving/ To V khác nghĩa

Verb	To V	V-ing
need	Need + to V: cần phải làm gì (mang nghĩa chủ động) Ex: Tom needs to work harder.	Need + Ving: cần phải được làm gì (mang nghĩa bị động) Ex: The grass behind the house needs cutting.
stop	Stop + to V: dừng để làm việc khác Ex: They stopped to look at the pictures.	Stop + Ving: dừng hẳn 1 việc gì Ex: My father stopped smoking.
regret	Regret + to V: tiếc phải thông báo 1 điều gì xấu Ex: I regret to inform that they have decided to cancel the meeting.	Regret + Ving: hối hận đã làm gì Ex: I regret not speaking to her before she left.
remember	Remember + to V: nhớ phải làm	Remember + Ving: nhớ đã làm gì

	<i>Ex: Remember to send this letter.</i>	<i>Ex: I still remember paying her \$2.</i>
forget	Forget + to V: quên phải làm gì <i>Ex: I forget to post this letter.</i>	Forget + Ving: quên đã làm gì <i>Ex: She will never forget meeting the Queen.</i>
try	Try + to V: cố gắng làm gì <i>Ex: She tries to pass the exam.</i>	Try + Ving: thử làm gì <i>Ex: I'm trying making a cake.</i>
mean	Mean + to V: có ý định làm gì <i>Ex: I mean to tell you.</i>	Mean + Ving: có nghĩa là gì <i>Ex: It means staying out the troubles.</i>

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở dạng V hoặc to V

- He made me (do) \_\_\_\_\_ it all over again.
- She can (sing) \_\_\_\_\_ quite well.
- He will be able (swim) \_\_\_\_\_ very soon.
- I used (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in a caravan.
- You ought (go) \_\_\_\_\_ today. It may (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
- I want (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the house where our president was born.
- He made her (repeat) \_\_\_\_\_ the message.
- May I (use) \_\_\_\_\_ your phone?
- They won't let us (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ the Customs shed till our luggage has been examined.
- He wouldn't let my baby (play) \_\_\_\_\_ with his gold watch.
- They refused (accept). \_\_\_\_\_ the bribe. Please let me (know) \_\_\_\_\_ your decision as soon as possible.
- Could you (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ me the time, please?
- We must (send) \_\_\_\_\_ a telegram.
- You can (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ your dog with us if you don't (want) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) \_\_\_\_\_ him with you.
- I'd like him (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to a university but I can't (make) \_\_\_\_\_ him (go) \_\_\_\_\_.
- We could (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to a concert, unless you'd prefer (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ a museum.
- It is easy (be) \_\_\_\_\_ wise after the event.
- If you can't (remember) \_\_\_\_\_ his number you'd better (look) \_\_\_\_\_ it up.
- He should (know) \_\_\_\_\_ how (use) \_\_\_\_\_ the film projector, but if he doesn't had better (show) \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- I saw the driver (open) \_\_\_\_\_ his window and (throw) \_\_\_\_\_ a box into the bushes.

### BT 2. Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở dạng to V hoặc Ving

- She kept (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ during the film.
- I am learning (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
- Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ (give) me a hand?

4. I advised you (start) \_\_\_\_\_ (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for a flat at once.
5. He decided (study) \_\_\_\_\_ biology.
6. I dislike (wait) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. An instructor is coming (show) \_\_\_\_\_ us how (use) \_\_\_\_\_ the aqualung.
8. Some people seem (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a passion for (write) \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper.
9. I tried (explain) \_\_\_\_\_ to him but he refused (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ and went on (grumble) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. By (offer) \_\_\_\_\_ enormous wages he is persuading men (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ their present jobs and (work) \_\_\_\_\_ for him.
11. She suggested (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the museum.
12. They plan (start) \_\_\_\_\_ college in the autumn.
13. I don't want (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
14. Many young people are fond of (play) \_\_\_\_\_ football and other kinds of sports.
15. Your house needs (decorate). \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I remember (allow) \_\_\_\_\_ them to play in my garden.
17. We found it very difficult (work) \_\_\_\_\_ with Gamma.
18. We regret (inform) \_\_\_\_\_ you that we cannot approve your suggestion.
19. The driver stopped (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a coffee because he felt sleepy.
20. Please wait a minute. My boss is busy (write) \_\_\_\_\_ something.

**BT 3. Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở dạng V-ing hoặc to V có ý nghĩa khác nhau**

1. My brother stopped (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the youth club because he is very busy.
2. She was late because she stopped (help) \_\_\_\_\_ some children cross the street.
3. Where are the keys? I remember (lay) \_\_\_\_\_ them on this table this morning.
4. Remember (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ me when you come here.
5. I am sorry I have forgotten (do) \_\_\_\_\_ what you said to me this morning.
6. I will never forget (work) \_\_\_\_\_ with you. You have helped me a lot.
7. I regret (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out last night.
8. I regret (inform) \_\_\_\_\_ you that your application hasn't been accepted.
9. When I arrived, he was trying (start) \_\_\_\_\_ his new car, there was something wrong with the machine. He even tried (work) \_\_\_\_\_ it downhill twice, but that didn't work either.
10. I didn't mean (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ anything but the cakes looked so good that I couldn't resist trying one.

**BT 4. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. It's possible \_\_\_\_\_ a train across Canada.  
A. take                      B. to take                      C. taking                      D. taken

2. Before we leave, let's have Shally \_\_\_\_\_ a map for us so we won't get lost.  
A. draw                      B. to draw                      C. drawing                      D. drawn
3. I can hear a cat \_\_\_\_\_ at the window.  
A. scratches                      B. to scratch                      C. scratching                      D. was scratching
4. I think your mother should let you \_\_\_\_\_ your own mind.  
A. make up                      B. to make up                      C. making up                      D. made up
5. They couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ when they heard the little boy singing a love song.  
A. laughing                      B. to laugh                      C. laugh                      D. laughed
6. \_\_\_\_\_ bread, you usually need flour, salt, and yeast.  
A. Make                      B. To make                      C. Making                      D. For make
7. I was delighted \_\_\_\_\_ my old friends again.  
A. to see                      B. seeing                      C. seen                      D. to be seen
8. \_\_\_\_\_ to friends is nice but \_\_\_\_\_ alone is also enjoyable.  
A. Talk/ to be                      B. To talk/ be                      C. Talk/ be                      D. Talking/ being
9. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ to Elvis than the Beatles.  
A. listen                      B. to listen                      C. listening                      D. listened
10. The aim of the culture festival is \_\_\_\_\_ friendship between the two countries.  
A. promote                      B. promoting                      C. to promote                      D. being promoted
11. It has become necessary \_\_\_\_\_ water in the metropolitan area because of the severe drought.  
A. rationing                      B. ration                      C. to ration                      D. to have rationed
12. All the passengers were made \_\_\_\_\_ their seat belts during the turbulence.  
A. buckle                      B. to buckle                      C. buckling                      D. for buckling
13. \_\_\_\_\_ good ice cream, you need to use a lot of cream.  
A. Make                      B. Making                      C. To make                      D. For make
14. I got my good friend \_\_\_\_\_ her car for the weekend.  
A. to let me to borrow                      B. to let me borrow                      C. let me borrow                      D. let me to borrow
15. Last night we saw a meteor \_\_\_\_\_ through the sky.  
A. streaked                      B. to streak                      C. streak                      D. to have streak
16. The skiers would rather \_\_\_\_\_ through the mountains than go by bus.  
A. to travel on train                      B. traveled by train                      C. travel by train                      D. traveling by train
17. If we leave now for our trip, we can drive half the distance before we stop \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.  
A. having                      B. to have                      C. having had                      D. for having
18. Try \_\_\_\_\_ so many mistakes.  
A. not to make                      B. not make                      C. to make not                      D. make not
19. You had better \_\_\_\_\_ home and have a rest.  
A. going                      B. goes                      C. to go                      D. go
20. I hope \_\_\_\_\_ to university next year.  
A. to go                      B. go                      C. going                      D. went
21. I expected \_\_\_\_\_ to the party, but I was not.  
A. to invite                      B. inviting                      C. to be invited                      D. being invited
22. The manager insisted \_\_\_\_\_ me a position in the company.  
A. for offering                      B. on offering                      C. in offer                      D. on offer
23. They invited me \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend with them.  
A. spends                      B. spend                      C. to spend                      D. spending
24. He reminded me \_\_\_\_\_ the letter.  
A. post                      B. to post                      C. posting                      D. to posting
25. Mary apologized for \_\_\_\_\_ him earlier.

- A. not phoning      B. not phone      C. not to phone      D. not to phoning
26. She advised him \_\_\_\_\_ harder.  
A. to study      B. to studying      C. study      D. studying
27. My mother asked me \_\_\_\_\_ the window.  
A. open      B. opening      C. to opening      D. to open
28. Susan insisted on \_\_\_\_\_ Mary to the beach.  
A. drive      B. driving      C. to drive      D. to driving
29. Mary refused \_\_\_\_\_ me any more money.  
A. to lend      B. to lending      C. lend      D. lending
30. The teacher told his students \_\_\_\_\_ all the homework before they \_\_\_\_\_ to class.  
A. do/ come      B. to do/ come      C. to do/ came      D. do/ came

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18: SỰ HOÀ HỢP GIỮA  
CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ  
(SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT)**

# I. LÍ THUYẾT

## 2. Một số động từ chia số ít

1. Danh từ không đếm được hoặc đếm được số ít	Ex: - Water <u>is</u> very necessary to our life. - The film <u>is</u> very interesting.
3. Chủ ngữ là to V hoặc V-ing	Ex: - Colleting stamps <u>is</u> my hobby. - To make a paper plane <u>is</u> very easy.
4. Đại từ bất định: everybody, everyone, everything, somebody, someone, something, nobody, no one, nothing	Ex: - Somebody <u>has</u> taken my books away.
5. Chủ ngữ chỉ khoảng cách, thời gian, tiền bạc, số lượng, đo lường, tên bộ phim,...	Ex: - Six miles <u>is</u> a long distance. - Two years <u>is</u> long enough. - The Fox and the Crow <u>is</u> a fary tale story.
6. Chủ ngữ là tên các môn học tận cùng bằng “-ics” ( <i>Physics</i> , <i>Economics</i> , <i>Mathematics</i> ), tên các môn thể thao ( <i>Athletics</i> , <i>Gymnastics</i> ), tên các loại bệnh ( <i>Measles</i> , <i>Mumps</i> , <i>Diabetes</i> )	Ex: - Physics <u>is</u> my favourite subject.
7. Each/ every/ neither/ either + N số ít Each/ every/ neither/ either + of + N số nhiều	Ex: - Every seat <u>has</u> a number. - Neither of my sisters <u>likes</u> him.
8. N and N (khi các N đề cập đến 1 người, 1 vật, biểu thức toán học)	Ex: - Fish and chips <u>is</u> Tom’s favourite. - Two and two <u>is</u> four.
9. A pair of A group of + N số nhiều + V số ít One of	Ex: - A pair of shoes <u>is</u> very nice. - One of the pitures <u>is</u> beautiful.

## 2. Một số động từ chia số nhiều

1. Danh từ số nhiều làm chủ ngữ.	Ex: - These students <u>are</u> very smart. - Water and oil <u>do not</u> mix.
2. Danh từ chỉ tập hợp (the + tính từ) (the old, the rich, the disabled,...)	Ex: - The rich <u>are not</u> always happy.
3. Danh từ số nhiều ở dạng đặc biệt (police, people, cattle, clergy, folk, poultry, ...)	Ex: - Cattle <u>are</u> domestic animals.

## 3. Một số trường hợp vừa là số ít, vừa là số nhiều

1. Acompany by	Ex:
----------------	-----

N1+ Along with + N2 + V (N1) As well as In addition to	- My sister as well as my brother <u>likes</u> this book.
2. Either or Neither + N1 + nor + N2 + V(N2) Not only but also	Ex: - Neither you nor I <u>am</u> here. - Not only my sisters but also my father <u>knows</u> you.
3. A number of + N số nhiều + V số nhiều The number of A great deal of + N số nhiều + V số ít A large amount	Ex: - A number of my students <u>are</u> keen on learning English. - The number of students in this class <u>is</u> small.
4. Các danh từ tập hợp (Community, Class, Public, Government, Staff, Army, Family, Team, Company) - nếu chỉ hành động của từng thành viên thì dùng số nhiều - nếu chỉ tính chất của tập thể đó thì dùng số ít	Ex: - The family <u>are</u> having breakfast. - The family <u>is</u> very conservative.
5. All/ Some/ Most/ A lot of/ None of/ + N số ít + V số ít Half/ phân số/ + N số nhiều + V số nhiều phần trăm	Ex: - Most money <u>is</u> needed. - One third of the population <u>is</u> unemployed.
6. There/ Here + V số ít + N số ít + V số nhiều + số nhiều	Ex: - There <u>is</u> a picture on the wall. - There <u>are</u> two pictures on the wall.
7. Chủ ngữ là dân tộc + V số nhiều Chủ ngữ là tiếng nói + V số ít	Ex: - The Vietnamese <u>are</u> hard-working. - English <u>is</u> so difficult to master.

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1: Chọn dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc

1. A number of books (**is/ are**) on the table.
2. The number of students in this class (**is/ are**) limited to thirty.
3. Each boy in this class (**has/ have**) his own notebook.
4. Everybody (**has/ have**) a good time.
5. No one (**is/ are**) eager to be examined the first.
6. Bread and butter (**is/ are**) all he asked for.
7. A fever, a loss of wealth, a loss of friends (**seems/ seem**) at the moment untold loss.
8. The boxes of candy (**is/ are**) on the table.
9. Most of the members (**is/ are**) happy.
10. Neither of the answers (**is/ are**) correct.
11. Half of the students (**is/ are**) looking out.
12. Some of the sugar (**was/were**) spilt on the floor.
13. The result of Dr. Noll's experiment (**was, were**) published in a scientific journal.
14. There (**is/ are**) plenty of time.

15. There **(is/ are)** a lot of lakes.
16. Not only John but also his brothers **(is/ are)** to blame.
17. The girl, as well as the boys, **(has/ have)** learnt to ride.
18. The bat together with the ball **(was/ were)** stolen.
19. Either your key or my key **(is/ are)** missing.
20. Here **(is/ are)** bread and the dictionary.
21. Here **(is/ are)** bread and butter for breakfast.
22. Three fourths of the wall **(is/ are)** painted.
23. Two times two **(makes/ make)** four.
24. “The three Musketeers” **(is/ are)** written by Alexandre Dumas.
25. Washing the dishes **(is/ are)** the children’ job.
26. The police **(is/ are)** coming. I’ve already called them.
27. Japanese **(is/ are)** very difficult for English speakers to learn.
28. The Japanese **(has/ have)** a long and interesting history.
29. The poor **(is/ are)** helped by government program.
30. Economics **(is/ are)** favourite subjects.

**BT 2: Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. The magazines on the table \_\_\_\_\_ for you.  
A. is                                      B. are                                      C. was taken                              D. has been taken
2. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.  
A. is                                      B. are                                      C. were                                      D. have been
3. There \_\_\_\_\_ some money on the table.  
A. is                                      B. are                                      C. were                                      D. have been
4. This information about taxes \_\_\_\_\_ helpful.  
A. is                                      B. are                                      C. were                                      D. have been
5. Tomatoes \_\_\_\_\_ lots of sunshine to grow.  
A. need                                      B. needs                                      C. is needing                              D. are needing
6. The people next door \_\_\_\_\_ hiking every weekend in the summer.  
A. have gone                              B. are going                              C. go                                      D. goes
7. My father and mother \_\_\_\_\_ for the same company.  
A. work                                      B. works                                      C. has worked                              D. is going to work
8. Most of the mountain peaks in the Himalayan range \_\_\_\_\_ with snow the year around.  
A. cover                                      B. covers                                      C. is covered                              D. are covered
9. The United States of America \_\_\_\_\_ of fifty separate states.  
A. consist                                      B. consists                                      C. is consisting                              D. are consisting
10. Two hours \_\_\_\_\_ too long to wait, don’t you think?.  
A. is                                      B. are                                      C. were                                      D. have been
11. A lot of Brazillians \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish.  
A. speak and understand                                      B. speaks and understands



**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19: CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI  
(TAG QUESTIONS)**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

**1. Cách thành lập**

V1	V2 (tag question)?
(+) (-) To be Modal verb (will, can,...) verb	(-) (+) To be n't Modals n't (won't, can't) TDT (do/ does/ did) n't

**2. Các bước viết câu hỏi đuôi**

B1: xác định động từ trong vế 1 là gì (to be, modal verb hay verb) để chia cho đúng

B2: xác định vế 1 là phủ định hay khẳng định thì vế 2 sẽ ngược lại

B3: chủ ngữ là ai

**3. Một số trường hợp đặc biệt**

V1	V2(tag question)?
<b>1. I am</b> <b>I am not</b> Eg: I am a student, aren't I?	=> <b>Aren't I</b> => <b>Are I</b>
<b>2. Let's + V</b> Eg: Let's go for a picnic, shall we?	=> <b>Shall we</b>
<b>3. * Everyone, someone, anyone, (chỉ người)</b> Eg: Somebody wanted a drink, didn't they? <b>* Everything, something (chỉ vật)</b> Eg: Everything can happen, can't it? <b>* No one/ nobody/ nothing (nghĩa phủ định)</b> Eg: Nothing can happen, can it? Nobody phoned, did they?	=> <b>They</b>  => <b>It</b>  => <b>Khẳng định</b>
<b>4. This/ that</b> Eg. This is a book, isn't it? <b>These/ those</b> Eg: Those are books, aren't they?	=> <b>It</b>  => <b>They</b>

<b>5. There</b> Eg: There are 3 pens on the chair, aren't there?	=> <b>There</b>
<b>6. Các từ nghĩa phủ định: never, seldom, hardly, scarcely, little, no, neither</b> Eg: He seldom drinks wine, does he?	=> <b>Khẳng định</b>
<b>7. Câu mệnh lệnh (V/ don't + V)</b> Eg: Open the door, will you? Don't open the door, will you?	=> <b>Will you</b>
<b>8. I wish</b> Eg: I wish to study English, may I?	=> <b>May I</b>
<b>9. * S + 'd better (nên làm gì) = had better</b> Eg: You'd better do morning exercise, hadn't you? <b>* S + 'd rather (muốn làm gì) = would rather</b> Eg: She 'd rather to do exercise, wouldn't she? <b>* S + used to (đã từng làm gì)</b> Eg: I used to smoke, didn't I?	=> <b>Hadn't + S</b> => <b>Wouldn't + S</b> => <b>Didn't + S</b>
<b>10. S1 + V1 + that + S2 + V2, tag question?</b> Ex: She thinks that she is smart, doesn't she? <b>Nếu S1 là I/ It seems that + S2 + V2, tag question?</b> Ex: I think that she is smart, isn't she?	=> <b>chia theo V1</b> => <b>chia theo V2</b>

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1: Viết các câu hỏi đuôi sau

1. You broke the window, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. I wish I went swimming, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. He plays the guitar badly, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. I am not stupid, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. There is a cat sitting on the chair, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. She doesn't come here, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Tom can help her, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. There are 4 people in my family, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. It seems that this river is polluted, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. You don't know Jack Smith, \_\_\_\_\_?
11. Hai can play the piano, \_\_\_\_\_?
12. I'm your friend, \_\_\_\_\_?
13. She thought that Jim loved her, \_\_\_\_\_?
14. Everything is ok, \_\_\_\_\_?
15. Nobody called on the phone, \_\_\_\_\_?
16. They couldn't understand him, \_\_\_\_\_?
17. You go to school today, \_\_\_\_\_?
18. She doesn't eat meat, \_\_\_\_\_?
19. There wasn't enough time, \_\_\_\_\_?
20. No salt is allowed, \_\_\_\_\_?

21. Neither of them complained, \_\_\_\_\_?
22. Let's sing karaoke, \_\_\_\_\_?
23. Turn on the light, \_\_\_\_\_?
24. He has helped nobody, \_\_\_\_\_?
25. The children won't want to go to bed early, \_\_\_\_\_?
26. The movie received several Oscars, \_\_\_\_\_?
27. Mary seldom wears her dress, \_\_\_\_\_?
28. Tom and Jerry can't live in peace, \_\_\_\_\_?
29. The John family used to live in Liverpool, \_\_\_\_\_?
30. Mr Bao said that we should use solar energy, \_\_\_\_\_?

**BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng nhất**

1. We should call Rita, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. should we                  B. shouldn't we                  C. shall we                  D. should not we
2. Monkeys can't sing, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. can they                  B. can it                  C. can't they                  D. can't it
3. These books aren't yours, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. are these                  B. aren't these                  C. are they                  D. aren't they
4. That's Bod's, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. is that                  B. isn't it                  C. isn't that                  D. is it
5. No one died in the accident, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. did they                  B. didn't they                  C. did he                  D. didn't he
6. The air-hostess knows the time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. does she                  B. isn't it                  C. doesn't she                  D. did she
7. This is the second time she's been here, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. isn't this                  B. isn't it                  C. has she                  D. hasn't she
8. They must do as they are told, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. mustn't they                  B. must they                  C. are they                  D. aren't they
9. He hardly has anything nowadays, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. hasn't she                  B. has he                  C. doesn't he                  D. does she
10. You've never been in Italy, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. have you                  B. haven't you                  C. been you                  D. had you
11. Sally turned her report, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. didn't she                  B. did she                  C. hadn't she                  D. didn't she
12. He arrived late, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. didn't he                  B. did he                  C. hadn't he                  D. had he
13. Andrew isn't sleeping, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. is he                  B. isn't he                  C. was he                  D. wasn't he
14. You have a ticket to the game, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. have you                  B. don't you                  C. haven't you                  D. do you
15. Tom knows Alice, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't he                  B. is he                  C. does he                  D. isn't he
16. Come into the kitchen, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do you                  B. will you                  C. won't you                  D. B and C
17. Everybody likes beauty, \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. doesn't he                      B. do they                      C. don't they                      D. does he
18. Peter never comes to class late, \_\_\_\_\_?
- A. doesn't he                      B. doesn't Peter                      C. does he                      D. does Peter
19. I'm going to see my grandparents in HCM City next week, \_\_\_\_\_?
- A. aren't I                      B. am I not                      C. are you                      D. A and B
20. Your baby is very lovely, \_\_\_\_\_?
- A. is he                      B. isn't he                      C. is it                      D. isn't it

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20: MỐI LIÊN QUAN GIỮA QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN VÀ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH**

**I. LÝ THUYẾT**

1. **This is the first time** I have seen him.

=> I have **never** seen him **before**.

The first time: lần đầu tiên

Never ...before : chưa bao giờ trước đây

2. I **started / begun** studying English 3 years **ago**.

=> I **have studied** English **for** 3 years.

Nếu không có ago mà có when + MĐ thì giữ nguyên MĐ chỉ đổi **when** thành **since**.

3. I **last** saw him **when** I was a student.

=> I **haven't seen** him **since** I was a student.

Last : lần cuối/ Since : từ khi

4. **The last time** she went out with him **was** two years **ago**.

=> **She hasn't gone** out with him **for** two years.

5. **It's** ten years since I **last** met him.

=> I **haven't met** him **for** ten years.

6. **When** did you buy it?

=> **How long** have you bought?

**Mẫu này có dạng:**

When: dùng quá khứ đơn

How long: dùng hiện tại hoàn thành

**II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**BT 1. Viết lại câu không thay đổi nghĩa:**

1. This is the first time he went abroad.

=> He hasn't.....

2. This is the first time I had such a delicious meal.

- => I haven't.....
3. She hasn't played this game well before.  
=> This is .....
4. She started driving 1 month ago.  
=> She has.....
5. We began eating when it started to rain.  
=> We have.....
6. She has taught the children in this remote village for five months.  
=> She started .....
7. I have lived in Ho Chi Minh City since I was 8.  
=> I began .....
8. I last had my hair cut when I left her.  
=> I haven't.....
9. They last talked to each other two months ago.  
=> They haven't .....
10. She hasn't had a swim for five years.  
=> She last .....
11. I haven't met Linda for 2 weeks.  
=> I last .....
12. The last time she kissed me was 5 months ago.  
=> She hasn't.....
13. The last time she saw her elder sister was in 1999.  
=> She hasn't .....
14. He hasn't written to me since April.  
=> The last time .....
15. I haven't seen him for 8 days.  
=> The last time .....
16. It is a long time since we last met.  
=> We haven't.....
17. It is 5 years since I last visit my grandparents.  
=> I haven't .....
18. I haven't taken a bath since Monday.  
=> It is .....
19. When did you have it?  
=> How long .....?
20. How long have you bought that bag?

=> .When .....?

**BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng**

**1. Jack has stopped writing letters to Jill.**

- A. Jack has no longer stopped writing letters to Jill.
- B. Jack used to write letters to Jill.
- C. Jack has never written letters to Jill.
- D. Jack stopped writing letters to Jill when Jill come.

**2. Mary has been working in this company for five years.**

- A. Mary began to work in this company for five years.
- B. Mary began working in this company for five years ago.
- C. Mary began to work in this company five years ago.
- D. Mary has begun to work in this company five years ago.

**3. I have never eaten this kind of food before.**

- A. I used to eat this kind of food before.
- B. Before I came here I had ever eaten this kind of food.
- C. This is the first time I have ever eaten this kind of food.
- D. This is the most delicious food I have ever eaten.

**4. She last saw him years ago.**

- A. She hasn't seen him years ago
- B. She hasn't seen him for years ago.
- C. She didn't see him for years .
- D. It's years since she last saw him.

**5. It's ages since I last saw a Hollywood film.**

- A. It's ages because I last saw a Hollywood film.
- B. I haven't seen any Hollywood film before.
- C. I saw a last Hollywood film since ages ago.
- D. I haven't seen a Hollywood film for a long time.

**6. He hasn't smoked a cigarette for a week.**

- A. It is for a week that he hasn't smoked a cigarette.
- B. It is a week since he last smoked a cigarette.
- C. It is a cigarette that he smoked a week ago.
- D. It is a week ago that he smoked a cigarette.

**7. How long have you learnt English?**

- A. When did you learnt English?
- B. When did you learn English?
- C. How long is it since you learnt English?
- D. B & C are correct.

**8. John began playing the piano 10 years ago.**

- A. John played the piano 10 years ago.
- B. John has played the piano for 10 years.
- C. John used to play the piano 10 years ago.
- D. John doesn't play the piano anymore.

**9. She bought this book two weeks ago.**

- A. She has had this book for two weeks.
- B. She has had this book since two weeks.
- C. She had this book for two weeks.
- D. She has this book for two weeks.

**10. We last went to the cinema two months ago.**

- A. We haven't gone to the cinema for two months.
- B. We didn't go to the cinema for two months.
- C. We didn't want to go to the cinema any more.
- D. We stopped going to the cinema.

**11. It's the coldest winter they've ever had.**

- A. They've ever had such a cold winter.
- B. They've ever had such cold winter
- C. They've never had such cold winter.
- D. This is the first time they had such cold winter.

**12. It's over ten years since we got married.**

- A. We got married for over ten years.
- B. We have been married for over ten years.
- C. We were married for over ten years.
- D. We have been married since over ten years.

**13. She began to play the piano three years ago.**

- A. She has played the piano since three years.
- B. She has played the piano for three years.
- C. She doesn't play the piano now.
- D. She stops playing the piano now.

**14. It's two years since he last went home.**

- A. He hasn't gone home for two years.
- B. The last time he went home was two years ago.
- C. He didn't go home two years ago.
- D. Both a & b are correct.

**15. We started to write each other three years ago.**

- A. We used to write to each other for two years.
- B. We used to write to each other in two years.
- C. We have written to each other for two years.
- D. We have written to each other since two years.

**16. The last time I saw Jim was in 2004.**

- A. I have seen Jim since 2004.
- B. I haven't seen Jim since 2004.
- C. I have seen Jim for 2004.
- D. Jim has been seen since 2004.

**17. They have lived here for 6 years now.**

- A. They moved here for 6 years.
- B. They moved here 6 years ago.
- C. They are living here for 6 years now.
- D. They were living here since 6 years ago.

**18. Ken began working for that company 2 years ago.**

- A. Ken has been working for that company for two years.
- B. Ken has been working for that company since two years.
- C. Ken worked for that company for two years.
- D. Ken was working for that company for two years.

**19. I have never seen such an interesting film before.**

- A. This is the first time I have seen such an interesting film.
- B. This film is the best I have ever seen.
- C. This is the first time I saw such an interesting film.
- D. This is the best film that I saw.

**20. She hasn't drunk coca-cola before.**

- A. It's the first time she has drunk coca-cola.  
 C. It's the first time since she drank coca-cola.

- B. It's time for her to drink coca-cola.  
 D. It is time she drank coca-cola.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 21: CẤU TẠO CỦA TỪ  
 (WORD FORM)**
**A. LÝ THUYẾT****I. CÁCH CẤU TẠO CỦA TỪ****1. Cách cấu tạo của danh từ**

STT	Quy tắc	Ví dụ
1	<b>V + ment = N</b>	develop (v) + ment = development (n): sự phát triển
2	<b>V + ance/ ence = N</b>	attend (v) + ance = attendance (n): sự tham dự depend (v) + ence = dependence (n): sự phụ thuộc
3	<b>V + ion/ation = N</b>	invent (v) + ion = invention (n): sự phát minh
4	<b>V + age = N</b>	marry (v) + age = marriage (n): hôn nhân
5	<b>V + al = N</b>	survive (v) + al = survival (n): sự sống sót
6	<b>V + ledge = N</b>	know (v) + ledge = knowledge (n): sự hiểu biết, kiến thức
7	<b>V + er/ or/ ee/ ress/ ant/ ist = N</b>	work (v) + er = worker (n): công nhân act (v) + or = actor (n): diễn viên interview (v) + ee = interviewee (n): người đi phỏng vấn wait (v) + ress = waitress (n): nữ bồi bàn assist (v) + ant = assistant (n): trợ lý type (v) + ist = typist (n): người đánh máy
8	<b>Adj + ness = N</b>	rich (a) + ness = richness (n): sự giàu có polite (a) + ness = politeness (n): sự lịch sự
9	<b>Adj + ity/ y/ ty/ cy = N</b>	responsible (a) + ity = responsibility (n): trách nhiệm honest (a) + y = honesty (n): sự thật thà certain (a) + ty = certainty (n): sự chắc chắn proficient (a) + cy = proficiency (n): sự giỏi, sự thành thạo
10	<b>Adj + dom = N</b>	free (a) + dom = freedom (n): sự tự do
11	<b>Adj + ism = N</b> <b>N1 + ism = N2</b>	social (a) + ism = socialism (n): chủ nghĩa xã hội terror (n) + ism = terrorism (n): chủ nghĩa khủng bố

12	<b>Adj + th = N</b>	warm (a) + th = warmth (n): sự ấm áp, sự niềm nở
13	<b>N1 + hood = N2</b>	child (n) + hood = childhood (n): thời thơ ấu
14	<b>N1 + ship = N2</b>	friend (n) + ship = friendship (n): tình bạn
15	<b>V + ing = N</b>	cook (v) + ing = cooking (n): sự nấu ăn

## 2. Cách cấu tạo của động từ

STT	Quy tắc	Ví dụ
1	<b>Adj + en = V</b>	wide (a) + en = widen (v): mở rộng
2	<b>En + Adj = V</b>	en + large (a) = enlarge (v): tăng lên, phóng to
3	<b>N + en = V</b>	length (n) + en = lengthen (v): làm dài ra, kéo dài ra
4	<b>Adj + ise/ize = V</b>	social (a) + ise/ize = socialize (v): xã hội hoá
5	<b>N + fy = V</b>	beauty (n) + fy = beautify (v): làm đẹp
6	<b>ate</b>	educate (v)

## 3. Cách cấu tạo của tính từ

STT	Quy tắc	Ví dụ
1	<b>N + ly = Adj</b>	friend (n) + ly = friendly (adj): thân thiện
2	<b>N + ful = Adj</b>	success (n) + ful = successful (a): thành công
3	<b>N + less = Adj</b>	home (n) + less = homeless (a): vô gia cư
4	<b>N + ic = Adj</b>	economy (n) + ic = economic (a): thuộc về kinh tế
5	<b>N + able/ ible = Adj</b>	reason (n) + able = reasonable (a): có lí, hợp lí response (n) + ible = responsible (a): có trách nhiệm
6	<b>N + ous = Adj</b>	danger (n) + ous = dangerous (a): nguy hiểm
7	<b>N + some = Adj</b>	hand (n) + some = handsome (a): đẹp trai
8	<b>N + al = Adj</b>	nation (n) + al = national (a): thuộc quốc gia
9	<b>N + ing/ed = Adj</b>	bore (n) + ing/ed = boring/ bored (a): tẻ nhạt/buồn chán
10	<b>N + y = Adj</b>	rain (n) + y = rainy (a): có mưa sun (n) + y = sunny (a): có nhiều ánh nắng
11	<b>V + ent = Adj</b>	depend (v) + ent = dependent (a): phụ thuộc
12	<b>V + ive = Adj</b> <b>N + ive = Adj</b>	impress (v) + ive = impressive (a): ấn tượng expense (n) + ive = expensive (a): đắt
13	<b>N + ish = Adj</b>	fool (n) + ish = foolish (a): dại dột, ngu xuẩn self (n) + ish = selfish (a): ích kỉ

## 4. Cách cấu tạo của trạng từ

STT	Quy tắc	Ví dụ
1	<b>Adj + ly = Adv</b>	slow (a) + ly = slowly (adv): một cách chậm chạp rapid (a) + ly = rapidly (adv): một cách nhanh chóng

### \* Lưu ý:

STT	Quy tắc	Ví dụ
1	<b>N + ly = Adj</b> <b>Adj + ly = Adv</b>	like + ly = likely (a) quick + ly = quickly (adv)
2	<b>V + al = N</b> <b>N + al = Adj</b>	arrive + al = arrival (n) nation + al = national (a)

<b>3</b>	<b>V + ing = N</b> <b>N + ing = Adj</b>	teach + ing = teaching (n) bore + ing = boring (a)
<b>4</b>	<b>Adj + y = N</b> <b>N + y = Adj</b>	honest + y = honesty (n) wind + y = windy (a)

- **Fast** vừa là tính từ vừa là trạng từ. Do đó, không có dạng "fastly".

- **Hard** (chăm chỉ, vất vả, cực nhọc) vừa là tính từ, vừa là trạng từ.

+ **Hardly** mang nghĩa là hiếm khi, hầu như không chứ không mang nghĩa là chăm chỉ, vất vả.

- Trạng từ của tính từ "**good**" là từ "**well**". Do đó, không có dạng "goodly"

## II. TRẬT TỰ TỪ

### 1. Quy tắc

<b>V</b>	<b>adv</b>	<b>adj</b>	<b>N</b>
----------	------------	------------	----------

STT	Quy tắc	Ví dụ
1	Sau to be (am/ is/ are/ was/ were) + tính từ	The book <u>is so interesting</u> that I can't put it down.
2	Sau V (tri giác) + tính từ <i>hear, see, smell, taste, feel...</i>	The food <u>tastes delicious</u> .
3	Sau look, seem, get, become, find, make... + tính từ	She <u>looks happier</u> than yesterday.
4	Sau mạo từ (a/ an/ the) + danh từ.	<u>The development</u> of industry causes air pollution.
5	Sau tính từ sở hữu + danh từ.	He failed the exam because of <u>his laziness</u> .
6	Sau sở hữu cách + danh từ.	<u>Mai's house</u> is very nice.
7	Sau đại từ chỉ định (this/ that/ these/ those) + danh từ.	<u>This machine</u> has been out of order.
8	Sau some/ any/ many/ much + danh từ	There are <u>many people</u> waiting for the last bus.
9	Sau giới từ + danh từ.	<u>My parents</u> are celebrating 30 years, of marriage next week.
10	Sau danh từ + danh từ.	This firm is known for its high <u>quality products</u> .
11	Đứng đầu câu, ngăn cách với phần trong câu bằng dấu phẩy (,) là trạng từ.	<u>Traditionally</u> , the positions of the women were in the kitchen.
12	Khi có "and/ or/ but" thì hai vế cân nhau (cùng chức năng từ loại/ ngữ pháp/ ngữ nghĩa).	I am <u>happy and comfortable</u> .

## B. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Xác định dạng của những từ sau:

1. beauty (\_\_\_\_), beautify (\_\_\_\_), beautiful (\_\_\_\_), beautifully (\_\_\_\_)

2. reasonable (\_\_\_\_), reason (\_\_\_\_), reasonably (\_\_\_\_)

3. industry (\_\_\_\_), industrial (\_\_\_\_), industrialize (\_\_\_\_), industrious (\_\_\_\_)
4. comfort (\_\_\_\_), comfortable (\_\_\_\_), comfortably (\_\_\_\_)
5. invite (\_\_\_\_), invitation (\_\_\_\_)
6. care (\_\_\_\_), careful (\_\_\_\_), careless (\_\_\_\_), carefully (\_\_\_\_)
7. health (\_\_\_\_), healthy (\_\_\_\_)
8. disappointment (\_\_\_\_), disappoint (\_\_\_\_), disappointing (\_\_\_\_), disappointed (\_\_\_\_)
9. nation (\_\_\_\_), national (\_\_\_\_), nationalize (\_\_\_\_), nationality (\_\_\_\_)
10. act (\_\_\_\_), action (\_\_\_\_), activity (\_\_\_\_), active (\_\_\_\_)
11. lazy (\_\_\_\_), laziness (\_\_\_\_), lazily (\_\_\_\_)
12. education (\_\_\_\_), educate (\_\_\_\_), educated (\_\_\_\_), educative (\_\_\_\_), educational (\_\_\_\_)
13. success (\_\_\_\_), succeed (\_\_\_\_), successful (\_\_\_\_), successfully (\_\_\_\_)
14. pollute (\_\_\_\_), pollution (\_\_\_\_), pollutant (\_\_\_\_), polluted (\_\_\_\_)
15. decide (\_\_\_\_), decision (\_\_\_\_), decisive (\_\_\_\_)
16. achieve (\_\_\_\_), achiever (\_\_\_\_), achievement (\_\_\_\_), achievable (\_\_\_\_)
17. destroy (\_\_\_\_), destructive (\_\_\_\_), destructor (\_\_\_\_), destruction (\_\_\_\_)
18. will (\_\_\_\_), willing (\_\_\_\_), willingness (\_\_\_\_), willingly (\_\_\_\_)
19. obey (\_\_\_\_), obedience (\_\_\_\_), obedient (\_\_\_\_), obediently (\_\_\_\_)
20. able (\_\_\_\_), ability (\_\_\_\_), disable (\_\_\_\_), disability (\_\_\_\_)

### BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng

1. Faraday made many \_\_\_\_\_ in the field of physics and chemistry.  
A. discover                      B. discoveries                      C. discovered                      D. discovering
2. Faraday was an \_\_\_\_\_ in Davy's laboratory.  
A. assistance                      B. assist                      C. assistant                      D. assisted
3. The generator is one of Faraday's most important \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. achievements                      B. achievement                      C. achieve                      D. achieving
4. We will \_\_\_\_\_ our English vocabulary if we read English books every day.  
A. rich                      B. richness                      C. enrich                      D. richly
5. You study very well. It's \_\_\_\_\_ that you will fail the exam.  
A. possible                      B. impossible                      C. possibility                      D. impossibility
6. Lan always shares her \_\_\_\_\_ with me.  
A. sadness                      B. sad                      C. sadly                      D. unsad
7. These children have the \_\_\_\_\_ to imitate animals' voice.  
A. able                      B. ability                      C. disable                      D. disability
8. Money doesn't bring \_\_\_\_\_ to man.  
A. happy                      B. happiness                      C. happily                      D. unhappy
9. Good students aren't \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent students.  
A. necessary                      B. necessity                      C. necessarily                      D. unnecessary
10. I don't believe what he has just said. It is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. reason                      B. unreasonable                      C. reasonably                      D. reasoning
11. The teacher does everything in order to \_\_\_\_\_ her students.

- A. courage                      B. encourage                      C. encouragement                      D. encouraged
12. Please decide what you want to do. You must make a \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. decide                      B. decision                      C. decisive                      D. decisively
13. As an \_\_\_\_\_, Mr. Pike is very worried about the increasing of juvenile delinquency.
- A. educate                      B. education                      C. educator                      D. educative
14. The Minister of the Education and Training Department appeared on TV last night to \_\_\_\_\_ his new policy.
- A. public                      B. publicly                      C. publicize                      D. publicizing
15. He is interested in the \_\_\_\_\_ of old buildings.
- A. preserve                      B. preservation                      C. preservative                      D. preserved
16. He has very high \_\_\_\_\_ of his only son.
- A. expect                      B. expectation                      C. expected                      D. expectedly
17. Farmers need to \_\_\_\_\_ crops.
- A. rotation                      B. rotate                      C. rotational                      D. rotationally
18. He doesn't have a job. He is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. employed                      B. unemployed                      C. employer                      D. employee
19. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ the natural resources of our country.
- A. conservational                      B. conserve                      C. conserved                      D. conservation
20. The industrial \_\_\_\_\_ will lead to the country's prosperity.
- A. develop                      B. development                      C. developing                      D. developed
21. Forests must be managed \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. careless                      B. careful                      C. carefully                      D. care
22. The little boy felt very \_\_\_\_\_ because his parents did not let him go with them.
- A. disappoint                      B. disappointment                      C. disappointed                      D. disappointing
23. Your new dress makes you more \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. beauty                      B. beautiful                      C. beautify                      D. beautifully
24. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ differences in England.
- A. region                      B. regional                      C. regionally                      D. regions
25. The surgeons tried their best to save his life, but unfortunately the operation was \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. success                      B. successful                      C. unsuccessful                      D. sucessfully
26. \_\_\_\_\_ waste is one of the causes of air pollution.
- A. Industrialization                      B. Industrial                      C. Industry                      D. Industrious
27. Mount Vesurius is an \_\_\_\_\_ volcano.
- A. act                      B. active                      C. action                      D. activity
28. He has been very interested in doing research on \_\_\_\_\_ since he was at high school.
- A. biology                      B. biological                      C. biologist                      D. biologically
29. You are old enough to take \_\_\_\_\_ for what you have done.
- A. responsible                      B. responsibility                      C. responsibly                      D. irresponsible
30. The interviews with parents showed that the vast majority were \_\_\_\_\_ of teachers.
- A. support                      B. supportive                      C. supporter                      D. supporting

31. For \_\_\_\_\_ reasons, passengers are requested not to leave any luggage unattended.  
 A. secure                      B. securely                      C. security                      D. securing
32. We are impressed by his \_\_\_\_\_ to help us with the hard mission.  
 A. will                      B. willing                      C. willingness                      D. willingly
33. The more \_\_\_\_\_ and positive you look, the better you will feel.  
 A. confide                      B. confident                      C. confidently                      D. confidence
34. Many Vietnamese people \_\_\_\_\_ their lives for the revolutionary cause of the nation.  
 A. sacrifice                      B. sacrificed                      C. sacrificial                      D. sacrificially
35. What could be more \_\_\_\_\_ than a wedding on a tropical island?  
 A. romance                      B. romantic                      C. romanticize                      D. romanticism
36. Though their performance was not perfect yet, the students held the audience's \_\_\_\_\_ until the end.  
 A. attentive                      B. attention                      C. attentively                      D. attentional
37. Both Asian and Western students seem \_\_\_\_\_ about how to answer the questionnaire of the survey.  
 A. confusedly                      B. confused                      C. confusing                      D. confusion
38. She was \_\_\_\_\_ unaware of the embarrassing situation due to her different cultural background.  
 A. complete                      B. completed                      C. completing                      D. completely
39. What is more important to you, intelligence or \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. attraction                      B. attractiveness                      C. attractive                      D. attract
40. Children who are isolated and lonely seem to have poor language and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. communicator                      B. communication                      C. communicative                      D. communicate

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 22: TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ (THE ORDERS OF THE ADJECTIVE)

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

Khi dùng từ hai tính từ trở lên để miêu tả cho một danh từ, nếu các tính từ cùng loại thì ta phân cách chúng bằng dấu phẩy, còn nếu khác loại thì ta xếp chúng cạnh nhau.

Trật tự các tính từ được quy định theo thứ tự sau:

#### OSASCOMP

**Opinion - Size - Age - Shape - Color - Origin - Material - Purpose**

Trong đó:

1. **Nhận xét (Opinion):** useful (hữu ích), beautiful (đẹp), interesting (thú vị), lovely (đáng yêu), delicious (ngon miệng)
2. **Kích cỡ (Size):** big (to), small (nhỏ), huge (khổng lồ), tiny (bé xíu), long (dài), short (ngắn)
3. **Tuổi thọ (Age):** old (già, cũ), young (trẻ), new (mới), ancient (cổ đại), modern (hiện đại),...
4. **Hình dáng (Shape):** round (tròn), triangle (tam giác), cubic (hình hộp), heart-shaped (hình trái tim), square (hình vuông)...
5. **Màu sắc (Color):** black (đen), red (đỏ), white (trắng), blue (xanh), yellow (vàng)
6. **Nguồn gốc (Origin):** Vietnamese, English, Indian, Thai, German, American,...
7. **Chất liệu (Material):** silk (lụa), gold (vàng), silver (bạc), wooden (gỗ), metal (kim loại),
8. **Mục đích (Purpose):** sitting, sleeping, wedding, waiting...

Ví dụ:

A beautiful old Indian lamp. (Một chiếc đèn Ấn Độ cổ tuyệt đẹp.)

A luxurious big new red Japanese car. (Một chiếc ô tô Nhật Bản to mới màu đỏ sang trọng.)

### II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

#### BT 1: Sắp xếp theo đúng trật tự tính từ

1. My sister lives in a (**new/ nice/ wooden/ black**) house.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
2. We are happy today because today is a (**memorable/ training/ long**) day.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
3. My colleague has a (**white/ Korean/ small/ old**) car.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
4. My friend and I often go home on (**shopping/ new/ narrow/ crowded**) street.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
5. Mrs. Navy likes wearing a (**red/ long/ lovely/ cotton**) dress on special occasions.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
6. The flower girl wore a (**silk/ pretty/ white**) dress at the wedding ceremony last night.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
7. She has (**blue/ big/ glassy**) eyes, so she is really different from others.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
8. The little boy is wearing a (**nice/ old/ blue/ big**) pullover.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
9. My grandparents live in a (**magnificent/ spacious/ old**) house during their lifetime.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
10. My mother often wears a pair of (**small/ comfortable/ black/ leather/ Chinese**) gloves when she washes the dishes.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_



- A. grey medium leather comfortable  
C. comfortable leather grey medium
9. They say he's a \_\_\_\_\_ student for his age.  
A. tall mature brilliant  
C. brilliant tall mature
10. The speaker is a \_\_\_\_\_ professor.  
A. old short Spanish kind  
C. Spanish kind old short
11. My sister lives in a \_\_\_\_\_ apartment.  
A. nice wooden new  
C. nice new wooden
12. My cousin bought a \_\_\_\_\_ bowl.  
A. blue ancient lovely small  
C. small blue ancient lovely
13. They cook a \_\_\_\_\_ meal for their children.  
A. delicious big traditional Vietnamese  
C. traditional delicious big Vietnamese
14. They are trying to build a house.  
A. four-bedroom elegant modern Italian  
C. Italian elegant four-bedroom modern
15. His brother presented her a \_\_\_\_\_ clock.  
A. oval nice Japanese digital  
C. digital oval Japanese nice
16. The old man owns a \_\_\_\_\_ coffee table.  
A. French beautiful round old  
C. old round beautiful French
17. My father has a \_\_\_\_\_ box.  
A. old small black Turkish  
C. small old black Turkish
18. Jack's father bought him a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ bike as a birthday gift.  
A. blue Japanese expensive  
C. Japanese expensive blue
19. She is good at creating \_\_\_\_\_ paintings.  
A. interesting Vietnamese new square  
C. Vietnamese interesting square new
20. My mother would like to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ bag.  
A. big plastic blue Russian  
C. big blue Russian plastic
- B. comfortable medium grey leather  
D. medium leather comfortable grey
- B. mature brilliant tall  
D. tall brilliant mature
- B. kind short old Spanish  
D. kind Spanish short old
- B. new nice wooden  
D. wooden nice new
- B. lovely blue small ancient  
D. lovely small ancient blue
- B. Vietnamese delicious big traditional  
D. big delicious traditional Vietnamese
- B. modern elegant four-bedroom Italian  
D. elegant four-bedroom modern Italian
- B. nice oval digital Japanese  
D. digital Japanese oval nice
- B. beautiful French old round  
D. beautiful old round French
- B. small old Turkish black  
D. small Turkish old black
- B. expensive Japanese blue  
D. expensive blue Japanese
- B. square Vietnamese new interesting  
D. interesting square new Vietnamese
- B. big Russian blue plastic  
D. Russian plastic big blue

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 23: LIÊN TỪ  
(CONJUNCTIONS)**

## I. LÝ THUYẾT

### 1. Cách sử dụng của SO... THAT/ SUCH... THAT

#### a. Cách dùng:

SO... THAT/ SUCH... THAT có nghĩa là "... đến mức..., đến nỗi...", diễn tả mối quan hệ nhân quả.

#### • Công thức

**S + V + SO + ADJ/ ADV + THAT + CLAUSE**

**= S + V + SUCH + (A/ AN) + ADJ + N + THAT + CLAUSE**

#### • Ví dụ:

+ She is so beautiful that many boys run after her.

= She is such a beautiful girl that many boys run after her.

+ The water is so hot that I can't drink it.

= It is such hot water that I can't drink it.

#### • Lưu ý:

Nếu danh từ trong mệnh đề "such... that" là danh từ số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được thì ta không sử dụng "a/ an" sau "such... that".

#### b. Cấu trúc TOO/ ENOUGH

#### • S + V + TOO + ADJ/ ADV + (FOR SB) + TO V: quá cho ai đó để làm gì

Ví dụ:

She is too lazy to make progress in study.

The coffee is too strong for me to drink.

#### • S + V + ADJ/ADV + ENOUGH + (FOR SB) + TO V: đủ cho ai đó để làm gì

Ví dụ:

She isn't old enough to understand the problem.

#### • LƯU Ý:

**+ Các biến đổi giữa cấu trúc TOO VÀ ENOUGH:**

Khi viết từ cấu trúc TOO về ENOUGH hoặc từ ENOUGH về TOO phải đảm bảo có sự đổi ngược nhau về thể của động từ và tính từ của hai câu phải trái nghĩa nhau.

Ví dụ: The sea is too dirty for us to swim in.

=> The sea isn't clean enough for us to swim in.

**+ Cách biến đổi giữa TOO về SO... THAT:**

Công thức:

**S + V + TOO + ADJ/ ADV + (FOR SB) + TO V**

**= S + V + SO + ADJ/ ADV + THAT + S + CAN'T/ COULDN'T + V + O**

Ví dụ:

He is too intelligent to solve all the problems.

=> He is so intelligent that he can solve all the problems.

The weather was too awful for us to go on a picnic.

=> The weather was so awful that we couldn't go on a picnic.

### 2. Cách sử dụng của EITHER... OR/ NEITHER... NOR/ NOT ONLY... BUT ALSO/ BOTH... AND

#### a. EITHER... OR (hoặc... hoặc), diễn tả sự lựa chọn khi nó đi với câu khẳng định

Ví dụ:

You can come either today or tomorrow.

#### b. EITHER... OR (không... không), diễn tả sự phủ định kép khi nó đi với câu phủ định

= **NEITHER... NOR** có nghĩa là “không... cũng... không”, diễn tả sự phủ định kép. (Neither... nor: chỉ đi với câu khẳng định)

Ví dụ:

She doesn't want to talk to either me or you.

= She wants to talk to neither me nor you.

\* **Lưu ý:**

Với cấu trúc neither ... nor / either ...or động từ chia theo chủ ngữ gần động từ nhất.

Ví dụ:

Neither she nor her children were at home yesterday.

c. **NOT ONLY... BUT ALSO:** có nghĩa là "không những mà còn", diễn tả sự lựa chọn kép

Ví dụ:

+ She is not only beautiful but also intelligent.

+ Not only she but also her husband came to the party last night.

d. **BOTH... AND** có nghĩa là “cả... và / vừa...vừa”, diễn tả sự lựa chọn kép

Ví dụ:

+ Both she and I are teachers of English in a high school.

+ It is both cold and rainy. (Trời vừa mưa vừa lạnh.)

**Lưu ý:**

**BOTH + S1 + AND + S2 + V (số nhiều)**

Ví dụ:

Both my sister and my brother like playing chess.

### 3. Cách sử dụng các liên từ khác

STT	LIÊN TỪ	CÁCH DÙNG	VÍ DỤ
1	<b>And</b>	- thêm, bổ sung thông tin <b>(và)</b>	+ She is rich <u>and</u> famous.
2	<b>Nor</b>	- bổ sung thêm một ý phủ định vào một ý phủ định được nêu trước đó. <b>(cũng không)</b>	+ I don't want to call him <u>nor</u> intend to apologize to him.
3	<b>But</b>	- diễn tả sự đối lập, ngược nghĩa <b>(nhưng, nhưng mà)</b>	+ She is beautiful <u>but</u> arrogant.
4	<b>Or/ Otherwise</b>	- nêu thêm sự lựa chọn <b>(hoặc là, hay là)</b>	+ Hurry up <u>or</u> else you will miss the last bus.
5	<b>Yet</b>	- đưa ra một ý ngược lại so với ý trước đó <b>(vậy mà, thế mà)</b>	+ They are ugly and expensive, <u>yet</u> people buy them.
6	<b>So (Therefore/ Consequently/ As a result)</b>	- nêu kết quả của hành động <b>(vì vậy, do đó, do vậy)</b>	+ He was ill, <u>so</u> he didn't go to school yesterday. + The car in the front stopped <u>so</u> suddenly. <u>Therefore</u> , the accident happened.
7	<b>Rather than</b>	- diễn tả lựa chọn	+ I think you should choose

		<b>(hơn là)</b>	to become a teacher <u>rather than</u> a doctor.
8	<b>Whether ... or</b>	- diễn tả sự thay thế <b>(hay là)</b>	+ I don't know <u>whether</u> he will come <u>or</u> not.
9	<b>After/ As soon as</b>	- diễn tả hành động xảy ra sau một hành động khác <b>(sau khi)</b>	+ <u>After/ As soon as</u> he had finished his work, he went out for a drink.
10	<b>Before</b>	- diễn tả hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác <b>(trước khi)</b>	+ He had finished his work, <u>before</u> he went out for a drink.
11	<b>When/ Once</b>	- liên kết 2 hành động có mối quan hệ về thời gian <b>(khi)</b>	+ <u>When</u> she came, I was cooking dinner.
12	<b>While/ Meanwhile</b>	- chỉ các hành động diễn ra cùng một lúc <b>(trong khi)</b>	+ <u>While</u> I was doing my homework, my mother was cleaning the floor.
13	<b>So that/ In order that + SV</b> <b>In order to/ So as to/ To + V</b>	- nêu mục đích hoặc kết quả của hành động có dự tính <b>(để mà)</b>	I'm trying my best to study English well <u>so that</u> I can find a better job. = I'm trying my best to study English well <u>in order to</u> find a better job.
14	<b>Whereas/ On the contrary/ In contrast/ On the other hand</b>	- diễn tả sự ngược nghĩa giữa hai mệnh đề <b>(trong khi)</b>	+ He loves foreign holidays, <u>whereas</u> his wife prefers to stay at home.
15	<b>As if/ As though</b>	- dùng trong giả định <b>(như thể là)</b>	+ He looked frightened <u>as if/ as though</u> he had seen a ghost.
16	<b>Besides/ Moreover/ Furthermore/ In addition</b>	- dùng để bổ sung thêm ý/thông tin <b>(ngoài ra/hơn nữa/ thêm vào đó)</b>	+ I can't go now, I'm too busy. <u>Besides</u> , my passport is out of date.
17	<b>For example/ For instance</b>	- ví dụ, chẳng hạn như	+ My sister likes many subjects. <u>For example/ For instance</u> : Maths, English and Music.
18	<b>Indeed/ In fact</b>	- được dùng để nhấn mạnh/xác nhận thông tin trước đó <b>(thực sự, quả thật)</b>	+ I am happy, <u>indeed</u> proud, to be a member of your team.
19	<b>Instead</b>	- <b>thay vì, thay vào</b>	+ We didn't go on holiday. We stayed at home, <u>instead</u> .
20	<b>Although/ Even though/ Though + SV</b>	- dùng để biểu thị hai hành động trái ngược nhau	<u>Although</u> the weather was awful, we decided to go

	= <b>Despite/ In spite of</b> + N/ Ving	( <b>mặc dù...nhưng</b> )	camping. = <u>In spite of</u> the awful weather, we decided to go camping.
21	<b>Because + SV</b> = <b>Because of/ Owing to/ Due to + Ving/ N</b>	- dùng để diễn tả mối quan hệ nguyên nhân, kết quả ( <b>bởi vì</b> )	<u>Because</u> the road was icy, many accidents happened. = <u>Because of</u> the icy road, many accidents happened.

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Viết lại các câu sau với từ gợi ý

1. My father has a very good health. He seldom takes any medicines. (SUCH... THAT)

⇒ .....

2. This coffee is so strong that I can't drink it. (SUCH... THAT)

⇒ .....

3. Mary's voice is so beautiful that we all like to hear her sing. (SUCH... THAT)

⇒ .....

4. My friend is very strong. He can lift up the table himself. (SO... THAT)

⇒ .....

5. Bill is such an intelligent boy that he always at the top of his class. (SO... THAT)

⇒ .....

6. The shelf is too high for the boy to reach. (SO... THAT)

⇒ .....

7. I have many problems. I can use all the help you can give me. (SO... THAT)

⇒ .....

8. The house is so expensive that we can't afford to buy it. (TOO)

⇒ .....

9. The map is so old that I can't read it. (TOO)

⇒ .....

10. The film is so good that I can't miss it. (TOO)

⇒ .....

11. The ladder wasn't long enough to reach the window. (TOO)

⇒ .....

12. This room is too small for us to hold the meeting. (ENOUGH)

⇒ .....

13. The test was so difficult that we couldn't do it. (ENOUGH)

⇒ .....

14. He spoke so fast that we couldn't hear him well. (ENOUGH)

⇒ .....

15. It was too late for them to go to the movies. (ENOUGH)

⇒ .....

**BT 2. Viết lại câu với từ gợi ý**

1. Jim is on holiday and so is Carol. (BOTH)

⇒ .....

2. I like Tom and I also like Peter. (BOTH)

⇒ .....

3. His parents as well as his brother are going to Halong Bay next Sunday. (BOTH)

⇒ .....

4. She was really frightened when hearing the noise from the forest and so did I. (BOTH)

⇒ .....

5. It is a very boring film. It is very long too. (NOT ONLY)

⇒ .....

6. Helen lost her passport at the airport. She also lost her wallet there. (NOT ONLY)

⇒ .....

7. It is the cheapest as well as the nicest watch. (NOT ONLY)

⇒ .....

8. George doesn't smoke and he doesn't drink. (NEITHER)

⇒ .....

9. Jim hasn't got a car. Carol hasn't got a car, either. (NEITHER)

⇒ .....

10. I don't like either horror film or action film. (NEITHER)

⇒ .....

11. She didn't write and she didn't phone. (NEITHER)

⇒ .....

12. On Friday evening, sometimes I go to the cinema, sometimes I stay at home and watch TV. (EITHER)

⇒ .....

13. I like neither watching TV nor reading a novel before going to bed. (EITHER)

⇒ .....

14. They can't begin working on Monday. They can't begin working on Wednesday. (EITHER)

⇒ .....

15. My sister didn't watch TV last night. She didn't listen to music last night. (EITHER)

⇒ .....

**BT3. Chọn đáp án đúng**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ of the committee, I'd like to thank you for your generous donation.  
A. Instead                      B. On behalf                      C. According                      D. In spite
2. There was nothing they could do \_\_\_\_\_ leave the cat at the roadside where it had broken down.  
A. but                      B. instead of                      C. than                      D. unless
3. I think it's \_\_\_\_\_ to take a few more pictures.  
A. enough light                      B. lightly enough                      C. light enough                      D. enough as light
4. This investigation is not only one that is continuing and worldwide \_\_\_\_\_ we expect to continue for quite some time.  
A. but one also that                      B. but one that also                      C. but also one that                      D. but that also one
5. A few natural elements exist in \_\_\_\_\_ that they are rarely seen in their natural environments.  
A. such small quantities                      B. so small quantities  
C. very small quantities                      D. small quantity
6. He always did well at school \_\_\_\_\_ having his early education disrupted by illness.  
A. apart from                      B. in spite of                      C. in addition to                      D. because of
7. \_\_\_\_\_ of all of us who are here tonight, I would like to thank Mr. Jones for his talk.  
A. In person                      B. Instead                      C. On account                      D. On behalf
8. John swims very well and \_\_\_\_\_ does his brother.  
A. also                      B. even                      C. so                      D. too
9. When he came to the counter of pay he found that he had \_\_\_\_\_ cash \_\_\_\_\_ his credit card with him.  
A. either/or                      B. neither/nor                      C. both/and                      D. not/neither
10. The firemen did well \_\_\_\_\_ their preparation for catastrophic gas explosions.  
A. although                      B. because                      C. despite                      D. because of
11. \_\_\_\_\_ there have been many changes in his life, he remains a nice man to everyone.  
A. However                      B. Although                      C. Because                      D. Despite
12. We've had \_\_\_\_\_ problems with our new computer that we had to send it back to the shop.  
A. so                      B. such                      C. enough                      D. too
13. The doctor decided to give her a thorough examination \_\_\_\_\_ he could identify the causes of her illness.  
A. unless                      B. after                      C. so as                      D. so that
14. \_\_\_\_\_ hungry I am, I never seem to be able to finish off a whole pizza.  
A. Wherever                      B. Whatever                      C. Whenever                      D. However
15. You should take regular exercise \_\_\_\_\_ sitting in front of the television all day.  
A. in spite of                      B. instead of                      C. without                      D. even
16. There are \_\_\_\_\_ that not only governments but also individuals should join hand to tackle.  
A. too numerous environmental problems                      B. such a lot of environmental problems  
C. so fewer environmental problems                      D. such many environmental problem
17. She started to laugh, \_\_\_\_\_ herself.  
A. in spite of                      B. on account of                      C. in addition to                      D. even though
18. "You should stop working too hard \_\_\_\_\_ you'll get sick".  
A. otherwise                      B. if                      C. in case                      D. whereas
19. You may get malaria \_\_\_\_\_ you are bitten by a mosquito.  
A. if                      B. so that                      C. though                      D. unless

20. She got the job \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that she had very little experience.  
 A. although                      B. because of                      C. despite                      D. because
21. I studied English for four years in high school. \_\_\_\_\_, I had trouble talking with people when I was traveling in the US.  
 A. Therefore                      B. Otherwise                      C. Although                      D. However
22. My sister won't go to the party tonight and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. so will I                      B. I will too                      C. neither will I                      D. I will neither
23. I will stand here and wait for you \_\_\_\_\_ you come back.  
 A. because                      B. though                      C. so                      D. until
24. Businesses will not survive \_\_\_\_\_ they satisfy their customers.  
 A. otherwise                      B. in case                      C. unless                      D. if
25. In Britain, most shops close at 6 pm, \_\_\_\_\_ in other countries they often open in the evening, too.  
 A. despite                      B. moreover                      C. nevertheless                      D. whereas
26. \_\_\_\_\_ his income of current job is relatively low, he finds it difficult to make ends meet.  
 A. Although                      B. As                      C. Because of                      D. In spite of
27. \_\_\_\_\_ Allan's inexperience as a midfielder, he played well and scored a decisive goal in the final match.  
 A. Since                      B. Although                      C. Despite                      D. Because of
28. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.  
 A. In spite being tired                      B. Despite of tiredness  
 C. Although to be tired                      D. Despite being tired
29. \_\_\_\_\_ busy she is, she manages to pick her children up after school every day.  
 A. However                      B. Although                      C. Despite                      D. Because
30. Her eyes are red and puffy \_\_\_\_\_ she has been crying a lot.  
 A. although                      B. since                      C. because of                      D. despite

**BT 4. Chọn đáp án thích hợp sao cho có ý nghĩa như câu ban đầu**

**1. I didn't want to disturb the meeting. I left without saying goodbye.**

- A. Rather than disturb the meeting, I left without saying goodbye.  
 B. I disturbed the meeting because I said goodbye.  
 C. I would rather disturb the meeting than leaving without saying goodbye.  
 D. The meeting was disturbed as I left saying goodbye.

**2. Having spent all his money, Daniel couldn't afford a new watch.**

- A. As Daniel had bought a new watch, he spent all his money.  
 B. Daniel didn't buy a new watch although he had a lot of money.  
 C. Because he had spent all the money, Daniel couldn't afford a new watch.  
 D. Daniel couldn't get a new watch because he didn't have much money.

**3. She doesn't want to go to their party. We don't want to go either.**

- A. Either we or she wants to go to their party.  
 B. Neither we nor she want to go to their party.  
 C. Neither we nor she wants to go to their party.  
 D. Neither she nor we don't want to go to their party.

**4. Noisy as the hotel was, they stayed there.**

- A. Much as the hotel was noisy, they stayed there.
- B. In spite of the noisy hotel and they liked it.
- C. Despite the hotel was noisy, they stayed there.
- D. Although the noisy hotel, they stayed there.

**5. She was so busy that she couldn't answer the phone.**

- A. She was very busy that she couldn't answer the phone.
- B. She was too busy to answer the phone.
- C. She was too busy not to answer the phone.
- D. She was very busy so that she couldn't answer the phone.

**6. Tim graduated with a good degree. He joined the ranks of the unemployed.**

- A. Tim joined the ranks of the unemployed because he graduated with a good degree.
- B. If Tim graduated with a good degree, he would join the ranks of the unemployed.
- C. Though Tim graduated with a good degree, he joined the ranks of the unemployed.
- D. That Tim graduated with a good degree helped him join the ranks of the unemployed.

**7. Smallpox is a dangerous disease. Malaria is a dangerous disease.**

- A. Smallpox is a dangerous disease, and so is malaria.
- B. Malaria is a dangerous disease, but smallpox is not.
- C. Neither smallpox nor malaria is a dangerous disease.
- D. Either smallpox or malaria is a dangerous disease.

**8. The substance is very toxic. Protective clothing must be worn at all times.**

- A. Since the substance is very toxic, so protective clothing must be worn at all times.
- B. So toxic is the substance that protective clothing must be worn at all times.
- C. The substance is such toxic that protective clothing must be worn at all times.
- D. The substance is too toxic to wear protective clothing at all times.

**9. Although she was very old, she looked very grateful.**

- A. In spite of very old, she looked very grateful.
- B. Despite she was very old, she looked very grateful.
- C. Despite her old age, she looked very grateful.
- D. In spite her being old, she looked very grateful.

**10. Though he tried hard, he didn't succeed.**

- A. However he tried hard, he didn't succeed.
- B. However hard he tried, he didn't succeed.
- C. However he didn't succeed hard, he tried hard.
- D. However he tried hard, but he didn't succeed.

**11. Slippery as the roads were, they managed to complete the race.**

- A. The roads were so slippery that they could hardly complete the race.
- B. The roads were slippery but they managed to complete the race.
- C. The roads were slippery so they could hardly complete the race.
- D. The roads were so slippery; therefore, they could hardly complete the race.

**12. Seeing that he was angry, she left the office.**

- A. She didn't want to make him angry, so she left.
- B. He wouldn't have been so angry if she hadn't been there.
- C. He grew very angry when he saw her leaving the office.
- D. She left the office when she saw how angry he was.

**13. He felt very tired. He was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.**

- A. He felt so tired that he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.
- B. Feeling very tired, he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.
- C. Tired as he might, he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.
- D. As result of his tiredness, he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.

**14. The weather was so dismal. They had to cancel the picnic immediately.**

- A. The weather was too dismal that the picnic was cancelled immediately.
- B. The picnic would be cancelled immediately since the weather was dismal,
- C. So dismal was the weather that they had to cancel the picnic immediately.
- D. The weather was enough dismal for them to cancel the picnic immediately.

**15. The coffee was not strong, so it didn't keep us awake.**

- A. The coffee was not strong enough to keep us awake.
- B. The coffee was very strong, but it couldn't keep us awake.
- C. We are kept awake because the coffee was strong.
- D. The coffee was so hot that it didn't keep us awake.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 24: GIỚI TỪ  
(PREPOSITIONS)**

## I. LÝ THUYẾT

### 1. Các loại giới từ

Các loại giới từ	Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Giới từ chỉ thời gian	IN (trong) - In + the + buổi  - In + mùa/ tháng/ năm/ thập kỉ/ thế kỉ - In + khoảng thời gian (dùng trong thời tương lai)	- In the + morning/ afternoon/ evening - In + spring/ summer/ fall/ winter - In May, 2019, in 1990s, in the 21st century, in 5 years'
	ON (lúc) - On + ngày/ thứ/ thứ + buổi - On + kì nghỉ + day	- On + Sunday (morning) - On + Christmas Day
	AT (vào lúc) - At + thời điểm - At + giờ	- At + night/ noon/ midday - At + Christmas
	Một số giới từ khác: - FOR (trong) + khoảng thời gian - SINCE (từ khi) + mốc thời gian - UNTIL/ TILL (đến, cho đến) - BEFORE (trước, trước khi) - AFTER (sau, sau khi) - DURING (trong, suốt) - BY (vào lúc) - FROM ... TO (từ ... đến)	- For two months, for a long time - Since last Monday, since 2002 - Until 5 o'clock, till midnight - Before lunchtime - After lunchtime - During World War II - By the end of May - From morning to noon
Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn	IN (trong) - In + làng/ thành phố/ đất nước - In + không gian (bên trong) - In + TTSH/ mạo từ + phương tiện - In the + phương hướng In + cụm từ cố định	- In + Duong Lam village/ Paris - In + a room/ park/ pool - In + her car/ the taxi/ a bus - In the + North/ West/ East/South In the + middle/ back
	ON (trên) - On + bề mặt - On + hướng trái/ phải - On + phương tiện truyền thông	- On + the table/ floor/ wall - On the + left/ right - On + television/ the Internet the radio/ the newspaper, etc.
	AT (ở/ tại) - At + địa điểm nhỏ, cụ thể - At the + địa điểm công cộng	- At + home/ work/ school - At the + station/ airport/ cinema
	Các giới từ khác: - ABOVE/ OVER (bên trên – không tiếp xúc với bề mặt)  - UNDER/ BELOW (ở dưới)  - IN FRONT OF (ở phía trước),	- Her name comes above mine on the list.  - The shoes are under the chair. The temperature has fallen below zero. - I hung my raincoat in front of/

	<p>BEHIND (ở phía sau), IN THE MIDDLE OF (ở giữa)</p> <p>- NEAR (gần)</p> <p>- NEXT TO, BY, BESIDE (bên cạnh, kế bên)</p> <p>- BETWEEN (ở giữa hai người/ vật), AMONG (ở giữa nhiều người/ vật)</p> <p>- INSIDE (ở bên trong), OUTSIDE (ở bên ngoài)</p> <p>- OPPOSITE (đối diện)</p>	<p>behind the door.</p> <p>- Is there a train station near here?</p> <p>- Peter is standing next to the gate.</p> <p>- Tom is sitting between Mary and Peter.</p> <p>Tom is among the crowd.</p> <p>- Luckily, no one was inside the building when it collapsed.</p> <p>- They sat opposite each other.</p>
Giới từ chỉ chuyển động	<p>- TO (đến)</p> <p>- FROM ... TO (từ ... đến)</p> <p>- THROUGH (xuyên qua)</p> <p>- ACROSS (ngang qua)</p> <p>- ROUND/ AROUND (quanh)</p> <p>- UP (lên)/ DOWN (xuống)</p> <p>- TOWARD(S) (về phía)</p>	<p>- He goes to school by bus.</p> <p>- How far is it from New York to California?</p> <p>- They walked through the woods.</p> <p>- The children ran straight across in front of our car.</p> <p>- The earth moves round/ around the sun.</p> <p>- We followed her up the stair.</p> <p>- Mary stood up and walked towards Peter.</p>
Một số giới từ khác	<p>- Giới từ chỉ mục đích: for, to, in order to, so as to (để)</p> <p>- Giới từ chỉ nguyên nhân: for, because of, owing to (bởi vì)</p> <p>- Giới từ chỉ phương tiện: by, with (bằng), through (nhờ qua)</p> <p>- Giới từ chỉ thể cách: with (với), without (không có)</p> <p>- Giới từ chỉ sự tương quan: according to (tùy theo), instead of (thay vì), in spite of (mặc dù)</p>	

## 2. Giới từ theo sau danh từ, tính từ và động từ

### a. Giới từ theo sau danh từ

#### FOR

demand for: nhu cầu về

reputation for: sự nổi tiếng

reason for: lý do về

regret for: nuối tiếc

responsibility for: trách nhiệm

desire for: sự mong muốn

cure for: việc chữa trị cho

talent for: tài năng

#### IN

Increase/ decrease in: tăng/ giảm

belief in: tin

experience in: có kinh nghiệm

interest in: thích, quan tâm

**OF**

advantage/ disadvantage of: thuận lợi/ bất lợi  
 knowledge of: kiến thức  
 lack of: thiếu  
 opinion of: ý kiến

cause of: nguyên nhân  
 benefit of: lợi ích  
 example of: ví dụ  
 sense of: ý thức

**TO**

access to: phương tiện  
 threat to: đe dọa

damage to: sự hư hại đối với  
 reply to: đáp lại

**ON**

effect on: ảnh hưởng  
 influence on: ảnh hưởng

advice on: khuyên  
 report on: báo cáo

**WITH**

relationship with: mối quan hệ  
 connection with: sự liên quan với  
 contact with: sự tiếp xúc với

association with: sự kết giao với  
 link with: liên kết với  
 trouble with: có vấn đề với

**BETWEEN**

difference between: sự khác biệt

comparison between: so sánh

**b. Giới từ theo sau tính từ****ABOUT**

annoyed (with sb) about: bực tức  
 excited about: hào hứng  
 anxious/ worried about: lo lắng  
 furious about: điên tiết về

careful about: cẩn thận về  
 happy about: hạnh phúc  
 sad/ upset about: buồn/ thất vọng  
 careless about: bất cẩn về

**AT**

amazed at: kinh ngạc về  
 clever/ skillful at: khéo léo về  
 good/ bad at: giỏi/ dở về (good/ bad for: tốt/ xấu cho)

quick at: nhanh nhẹn về  
 surprised at: ngạc nhiên về  
 excellent at: xuất sắc về

**FOR**

available for: có sẵn  
 necessary for: cần thiết cho  
 late for: trễ

responsible for: chịu trách nhiệm  
 useful for: có ích cho  
 famous/ known for: nổi tiếng

**FROM**

absent from: vắng mặt ở  
 free from/ of: thoát khỏi

different from: khác với  
 safe from: an toàn

**IN**

disappointed in/ with: thất vọng  
involved in: có liên quan

interested in: quan tâm  
successful in: thành công

## OF

full of: đầy  
ahead of: đi trước  
guilty of: có tội  
ashamed of: hổ thẹn  
independent of: độc lập  
aware/ conscious of: ý thức  
jealous of/ envious: ghen tị  
capable of: có khả năng

proud of: tự hào  
certain of/ about: chắc về  
scared/ frightened of/ afraid: hoảng sợ  
confident of: tự tin  
short of: cạn kiệt  
sure of: chắc  
fond of: thích  
tired of: chán

## TO

accustomed to: quen  
grateful to sb for sth: biết ơn  
addicted to: nghiện  
harmful to: có hại cho  
essential to/ for: cần thiết cho  
important to: quan trọng với

dedicated to: tận tụy  
married to: kết hôn với  
devoted to: tận tâm  
open to: mở ra cho  
equal to: bằng với  
similar to: tương tự với

## WITH

acquainted with: quen với  
friendly with: thân thiện  
angry with/ at sb about sth: giận  
happy with/ about: hạnh phúc về  
bored with/ fed up with: chán với

busy with: bận rộn với  
disappointed with: thất vọng  
pleased/ satisfied with: hài lòng với  
familiar with: quen thuộc với  
popular with: phổ biến với

## OF/ TO

generous/ good/ kind/ nice/ polite/ rude/  
stupid... to sb

generous/ good/ kind/ nice/ polite/ rude/  
stupid... of sb to do sth

### c. Giới từ theo sau động từ

#### ABOUT

care about sb/ sth: coi trọng  
remind sb about sth: nhắc ai nhớ  
complain about: phàn nàn  
talk about sb/ sth: nói chuyện về  
dream about/ of sb/ sth: mơ về

tell sb about sb/ sth: nói với ai về  
forget about: quên  
think about/ of sb/ sth: nghĩ về  
warn sb about/ of sth: cảnh báo về  
worry about: lo lắng

#### AT

aim (sth) at sb/ sth: nhắm vào  
arrive at/ in: đến tại  
glance at sb/ sth: liếc nhìn

smile at sb: mỉm cười với ai  
laugh at sb: cười nhạo ai  
look at sb/ sth: nhìn vào

## FOR

apply for sth: nộp đơn xin  
leave (a place) for: rời.... để đi đến  
account for: giải thích  
look for sb/ sth: tìm kiếm  
apologize for: xin lỗi  
ask sb for sth: yêu cầu ai về  
pay for sth: trả tiền cho

blame sb for sth: đổ lỗi cho ai về  
search for sb/ sth: tìm kiếm  
excuse for: xin lỗi  
thank sb for (doing) sth: cảm ơn  
forgive sb for (doing) sth: tha thứ  
wait for sb/ sth: chờ đợi  
hope for sth: hy vọng về

## FROM

escape from: trốn thoát khỏi  
protect sb from sth: bảo vệ

prevent sb from (doing) sth: ngăn chặn  
suffer from sth: chịu, bị (bệnh, đau khổ...)

## IN

believe in sb/ sth: tin vào  
specialize in sth: chuyên về

participate in: tham gia  
succeed in (doing) sth: thành công về

## INTO

crash into: tông, đụng vào  
divide/ split into: chia ra

cut into: cắt ra thành  
translate (from a language) into: dịch ra

## OF

accuse sb of (doing) sth: buộc tội ai  
disapprove of sth: không đồng ý  
approve of: đồng ý, chấp thuận

consist of sb/ sth: bao gồm  
die of/ from: chết vì  
think of: nghĩ về

## ON

concentrate on sth: tập trung vào  
live on sb/ sth: sống nhờ vào  
congratulate sb on (doing) sth: chúc mừng

rely on: tin cậy  
depend on: phụ thuộc  
insist on (doing) sth: nài nỉ

## TO

adapt to: thích nghi  
add to: thêm vào  
adjust to: điều chỉnh  
listen to: lắng nghe  
apologize to sb for (doing) sth: xin lỗi ai về

object to: phản đối  
complain to sb about sth: phàn nàn  
prefer ... to ...: thích ... hơn  
talk/ speak to sb: nói với  
devote to: cống hiến

## WITH

agree with: đồng ý  
argue with: cãi nhau với  
provide sb with sth: cung cấp  
(provide sth for sb: cung cấp)

compare with/to: so sánh  
communicate with: giao tiếp  
supply sb with sth: cung cấp  
(supply sth to sb: cung cấp)

## II. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### BT 1. Điền các giới từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. The price of electricity is going up \_\_\_\_\_ August.
2. They came to visit us \_\_\_\_\_ my birthday.

3. Did you have a good time \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas?
4. The children are really excited \_\_\_\_\_ their summer vacation.
5. We were very disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ the organization of the festival.
6. John missed a lot of lessons. He was ill \_\_\_\_\_ January to March.
7. Helen had said goodbye to everybody in the class \_\_\_\_\_ she left for the hometown.
8. My cat is very fond \_\_\_\_\_ fish.
9. I waited \_\_\_\_\_ 10 o'clock and then went home.
10. We can see many stars \_\_\_\_\_ the sky at night.
11. Children like to go to the circus \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.
12. My wife has been \_\_\_\_\_ Ho Chi Minh city several times.
13. He is very interested \_\_\_\_\_ football.
14. The river Rhine flows \_\_\_\_\_ the North sea.
15. I shall meet you \_\_\_\_\_ the corner \_\_\_\_\_ the street.
16. I always come \_\_\_\_\_ school \_\_\_\_\_ foot.
17. He had learned the whole poem \_\_\_\_\_ heart.
18. He has waited \_\_\_\_\_ her for a long time.
19. He's not very keen \_\_\_\_\_ watching football, but his wife is.
20. Are you worried \_\_\_\_\_ the final examination?
21. They are very proud \_\_\_\_\_ their new house.
22. That's very kind \_\_\_\_\_ you to help me \_\_\_\_\_ this math problem.
23. It has rained \_\_\_\_\_ two o'clock .
24. This restaurant is famous \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese dishes.
25. She enjoys participating \_\_\_\_\_ raising funds for the poor.
26. My grandmother prefers living in the countryside \_\_\_\_\_ living in the city.
27. My parents are tired \_\_\_\_\_ living in the city.
28. She's looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ seeing her sister.
29. Thank you \_\_\_\_\_ advising me not to smoke.
30. Are you jealous \_\_\_\_\_ his success.

### BT 2. Chọn đáp án đúng

1. \_\_\_\_\_ time \_\_\_\_\_ time I will examine you on the work you have done.  
A. From / to                      B. At / to                      C. In / to                      D. With / to
2. She was very surprise \_\_\_\_\_ the grade she received.  
A. at                      B . on                      C. of                      D. about
3. They translated the letter \_\_\_\_\_ French.  
A . for                      B. with                      C. into                      D. about
4. Make a comment \_\_\_\_\_ this sentence!  
A. to                      B. in                      C. on                      D. about
5. The medical center is close \_\_\_\_\_ campus.  
A. to                      B. for                      C. up                      D. with
6. She does not show much affection \_\_\_\_\_ him.

- A. with                      B. in                      C. for                      D. to
7. He always prevents me \_\_\_\_\_ doing my duty.  
A. of                      B. from                      C. with                      D. against
8. The war victims suffered terribly \_\_\_\_\_ cold and hunger.  
A. with                      B. from                      C. through                      D. of
9. You should book \_\_\_\_\_ advance because the restaurant is very popular in the area.  
A. on                      B. by                      C. with                      D. in
10. A large number of inventions and discoveries have been made \_\_\_\_\_ accident.  
A. in                      B. by                      C. at                      D. on
11. The people next door are furious \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ making so much noise last night.  
A. at/ with                      B. with/ for                      C. for/ to                      D. about/ in
12. The Vietnamese participants always take part \_\_\_\_\_ sports events with great enthusiasm.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. to
13. He isn't independent \_\_\_\_\_ any means. He depends \_\_\_\_\_ his father \_\_\_\_\_ everything.  
A. by/ on/ in                      B. for/ on/ in                      C. of/ in/ for                      D. on/ in/ with
14. He may be quick \_\_\_\_\_ understanding but he isn't capable \_\_\_\_\_ remembering anything.  
A. in/ of                      B. on/ at                      C. at/ of                      D. of/ at
15. Mum is always busy \_\_\_\_\_ her work in the laboratory.  
A. with                      B. at                      C. in                      D. of
16. Lan will stay there \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning in September \_\_\_\_\_ November.  
A. from/ to                      B. till/ to                      C. from/ in                      D. till/ of
17. I would like to apply \_\_\_\_\_ the position of sales clerk that you advised in the Sunday newspaper.  
A. for                      B. to                      C. with                      D. in
18. I have been looking \_\_\_\_\_ this book for months, and at last, I have found it.  
A. over                      B. up                      C. for                      D. at
19. She always takes good care \_\_\_\_\_ her children.  
A. for                      B. in                      C. of                      D. with
20. She is absent \_\_\_\_\_ class.  
A. at                      B. from                      C. to                      D. away
21. She arrived \_\_\_\_\_ two o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.  
A. at/ on                      B. in/ in                      C. at/ in                      D. on/ in
22. Brown and yellow hair is fashionable \_\_\_\_\_ the moment.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. over                      D. on
23. She went \_\_\_\_\_ with a bad cold just before Christmas.  
A. through                      B. over                      C. in for                      D. down
24. \_\_\_\_\_ general, our students are very intelligent and really active.  
A. In                      B. With                      C. By                      D. On
25. Facebook's terms of use state that members must be \_\_\_\_\_ least 13 years old with valid email ID's.  
A. without                      B. of                      C. at                      D. on
26. The ASEAN Vision 2020 is aimed \_\_\_\_\_ forging closer economic integration within the region.  
A. to                      B. for                      C. of                      D. at
27. We benefit greatly \_\_\_\_\_ the medicines and other products that biodiversity provides.  
A. from                      B. without                      C. for                      D. at
28. Were you aware \_\_\_\_\_ the regulations against smoking in the area?  
A. in                      B. with                      C. of                      D. about
29. My uncle took \_\_\_\_\_ golf when he retired from work.  
A. on                      B. after                      C. up                      D. over
30. My grandfather passed \_\_\_\_\_ when I was only six years old. He had lung cancer.  
A. out                      B. over                      C. away                      D. off
31. We are here to provide you \_\_\_\_\_ the best service possible.  
A. of                      B. with                      C. to                      D. for

32. It was so noisy outside that she couldn't concentrate\_\_\_\_\_her work.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. with                      D. on
33. The children are highly excited\_\_\_\_\_the coming summer holiday.  
A. with                      B. to                      C. for                      D. about
34. The manager is directly responsible\_\_\_\_\_the efficient running of the office.  
A. about                      B. for                      C. at                      D. in
35. His choice of future career is quite similar\_\_\_\_\_mine.  
A. at                      B. with                      C. for                      D. to
36. This part of the country is famous\_\_\_\_\_its beautiful landscapes and fine cuisine.  
A. about                      B. with                      C. of                      D. for
37. Bob has left home and is independent\_\_\_\_\_his parents.  
A. on                      B. of                      C. with                      D. in
38. Americans rarely shake hands to say goodbye except\_\_\_\_\_business occasions.  
A. on                      B. during                      C. at                      D. for
39. That song was popular\_\_\_\_\_people from my father's generation.  
A. for                      B. on                      C. about                      D. with
40. She was quick\_\_\_\_\_understanding what we wanted her to do.  
A. in                      B. about                      C. for                      D. at

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 25: TÌM LỖI SAI  
(IDENTIFY MISTAKES)**

**BT. Tìm lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng**

1. Nam asked Mai what can he do to help her.  
A                      B                      C                      D
2. Your friends went to your native village last weekend, weren't they?  
A                      B                      C                      D
3. I'd like to go out for dinner, but I don't feel like to eat out tonight.  
A                      B                      C                      D
4. Summer in England is the better season of all.  
A                      B                      C                      D
5. If we would have a large garden, we would plant a lot of flowers in it.  
A                      B                      C                      D
6. I have so much money that I don't know what do with it.  
A                      B                      C                      D
7. In spite the danger, they managed to cross the river during the night.  
A                      B                      C                      D
8. Don't speak English with him, he hardly not know any English.  
A                      B                      C                      D
9. This is the best place which I can think of for our holiday.  
A                      B                      C                      D
10. Because of An's English was poor, she couldn't pass the final exam.  
A                      B                      C                      D
11. Jom asked me did I liked his new motorbike.  
A                      B                      C                      D
12. He has learned a lot in the last couple of years, didn't he?  
A                      B                      C                      D
13. Learn English is necessary for my job.  
A                      B                      C                      D
14. Kangaroos, that can be seen every where in Australia, have long tails.  
A                      B                      C                      D
15. Please don't make so much noise. I study.  
A                      B                      C                      D
16. 90 percent of earthquakes occur around the Pacific Rim.  
A                      B                      C                      D
17. We usually go to our home village at least once aweek on summer.  
A                      B                      C                      D
18. Mr Van wishes that he has a radio to listen to the news.  
A                      B                      C                      D
19. My mom never lets me to go out at night.  
A                      B                      C                      D
20. The teacher which taught us English last year is Mr Smith.  
A                      B                      C                      D
21. Nam suggested practice English in class as much as possible.

- A B C D
22. Children are very exciting about the trip to Ha Long Bay.  
A B C D
23. I look forward to hear from my mother in Singapore.  
A B C D
24. They gave us a lot of information, most of that was useless.  
A B C D
25. Either my mother nor my father wants me to be an engineer.  
A B C D
26. Because my illness, I couldn't work for six months, so I lost my job.  
A B C D
27. In some parts of the region, there is a little vegetation.  
A B C D
28. The number of young criminals are on the increase.  
A B C D
29. Look! The new lorry enters the factory to carry the cargo.  
A B C D
30. The windows look dirty. They need to be cleaning.  
A B C D
31. The driver of the car was serious injured.  
A B C D
32. Both teenagers and adults feels like helping poor people, don't they?  
A B C D
33. They are going to have to leave soon and so do we.  
A B C D
34. You're tired although you stayed up too late to watch TV last night.  
A B C D
35. The car stopped for the children whom were waiting to cross the road.  
A B C D
36. Let's have a picnic on the beach, shan't we?  
A B C D
37. The reason which I haven't to Hawaii is that I can't afford it.  
A B C D
38. They are having their house being painted by a construction company.  
A B C D
39. The more you practice, the fluently you can speak.  
A B C D
40. Please give me a few milk and some biscuits if you have any left.  
A B C D
41. We admire Peter for his intelligence, cheerful disposition and he's honest.  
A B C D
42. The spectacular Royal Palace of the Imperial City is one of Hue's main tourist attraction.  
A B C D
43. Martin was chosen because she is a good manager who gets along for everyone.  
A B C D

44. Now go to bed and close your eye! You will feel fine after a good night's sleep.  
 A B C D
45. I rarely eat ice-cream now, but I use to eat when I was a child.  
 A B C D
46. If I have been hungry, I would have eaten something.  
 A B C D
47. Minh is studying higher mathematics in order attending an international mathematics contest.  
 A B C D
48. My brother says that he only enjoys to watch the whole city from the hill top nearby.  
 A B C D
49. Since it lives in the desert, the collared lizard depends from insects for water as well as for food.  
 A B C D
50. Although the sun was shining, it wasn't enough warm for our children to go swimming.  
 A B C D

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 26: TỪ ĐỒNG NGHĨA, TRÁI NGHĨA  
(SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS)**

**BT 1. Tìm từ đồng nghĩa với từ in đậm trong các câu sau**

1. He was asked to **account for** his presence at the scene of crime.  
A. complain      B. exchange      C. explain      D. arrange
2. The teacher gave some **suggestions** on what could come out for the examination.  
A. effects      B. symptoms      C. hints      D. demonstrations
3. I'll take the new job whose salary is **fantastic**.  
A. reasonable      B. acceptable      C. pretty high      D. wonderful
4. She was like **a cat on hot bricks** before her big exam.  
A. nervous      B. comfortable      C. depressed      D. relax
5. Heavy rain makes driving on the road very **difficult**.  
A. easy      B. hard      C. simple      D. interesting
6. Few businesses are **flourishing** in the present economic climate.  
A. growing well      B. setting up      C. closing down      D. taking off
7. Around 150 B.C. the Greek astronomer Hipparchus developed a system to **classify** stars according to brightness.  
A. record      B. shine      C. categorize      D. diversify
8. She is always **diplomatic** when she deals with angry students.  
A. strict      B. outspoken      C. firm      D. tactful
9. Roget's Thesaurus, a collection of English words and phrases, was originally arranged by the ideas they express **rather than** by alphabetical order.  
A. restricted      B. as well as      C. unless      D. instead of
10. As tourism is more developed, people worry about the damage to **the flora and fauna** of the island.  
A. fruits and vegetables      B. flowers and trees  
C. plants and animals      D. mountains and forests
11. This tapestry has a very **complicated** pattern.  
A. obsolete      B. intricate      C. ultimate      D. appropriate
12. We decided to pay for the furniture on the **installment** plan.  
A. monthly payment      B. cash and carry      C. credit card      D. piece by piece
13. When their rent increased from 200 to 400 a month, they protested against such a **tremendous** increase.  
A. light      B. huge      C. tiring      D. difficult
14. If we had taken his **sage** advice, we wouldn't be in so much trouble now.  
A. willing      B. sturdy      C. wise      D. eager
15. He had never experienced such **discourtesy** towards the president as it occurred at the annual meeting in May.  
A. politeness      B. rudeness      C. encouragement      D. measurement
16. He **didn't bat an eye** when he realized he failed the exam again.  
A. didn't show surprise      B. didn't want to see      C. didn't care      D. wasn't happy
17. I think we have solved this problem **once and for all**.  
A. forever      B. for goods      C. temporarily      D. in the end
18. The film is not worth seeing. The plot is too **dull**.  
A. simple      B. complicated      C. boring      D. slow
19. If the headmaster were here, he would sign your papers **immediately**.  
A. right ahead      B. currently      C. formerly      D. right away
20. Thirty minutes after the accident, the captain still refused to **abandon** the burning ship.

- A. sail                      B. get on                      C. leave                      D. come to
21. It will be fine tomorrow. But if it should rain tomorrow, the match will be **postponed**.  
A. taken off                      B. sold off                      C. put off                      D. turned off
22. Many scientists agree that global warming poses great **threats** to all species on Earth.  
A. annoyance                      B. risks                      C. irritations                      D. fears
23. Those girls are totally unaware that they are being **made use of** by this organization.  
A. taken for granted    B. spoken ill of                      C. made fun of                      D. taken advantage of
24. In life, Ray always **gives me a hand** with repairing the broken things in my house.  
A. assists me by                      B. asks me to help with    C. pleases me by                      D. serves me with
25. I just want to stay at home and watch TV and **take it easy**.  
A. sleep                      B. sit down                      C. eat                      D. relax
26. The rains of 1993 causing the Missouri river to overflow **resulted in** one of the worst floods of the 20th century.  
A. stopped                      B. lessened                      C. caused                      D. overcame
27. I'm becoming increasingly **absent-minded**. Last week, I locked myself out of my house twice.  
A. being considerate of things                      B. remembering to do right things  
C. forgetful of one's past                      D. often forgetting things
28. For calculating a calendar, it is **convenient** to use the tropical solar year.  
A. practical                      B. critical                      C. necessary                      D. appropriate
29. The 1923 earthquake in Japan killed about 200,000 people and left countless **wounded** and homeless.  
A. poor                      B. imprisoned                      C. suffered                      D. injured
30. The bomb **exploded** in the garage; fortunately no one hurt.  
A. put on                      B. went off                      C. got out                      D. kept up
31. The organization was **established** in 1950 in the USA.  
A. come around                      B. set up                      C. made out                      D. put on
32. Helen Keller, blind and deaf from an early age, developed her sense of smell so finely that she could **identify** friends by their personal odors.  
A. classify                      B. communicate with                      C. describe                      D. recognize
33. **Be careful!** The tree is going to fall.  
A. Look out                      B. Look up                      C. Look on                      D. Look after
34. The repeated **commercials** on TV distract many viewers from watching their favourite films.  
A. advertisements                      B. contests                      C. businesses                      D. economics
35. Becoming a **super star** performing on stage was my burning desire when I was a teenager.  
A. well-known painter                      B. famous singer  
C. good writer                      D. famous composer

**BT 2. Tìm từ trái nghĩa với từ in đậm trong các câu sau**

1. Because Jack **defaulted** on his loan, the bank took him to court.  
A. failed to pay                      B. paid in full  
C. had a bad personality                      D. was paid much money

2. The government is not prepared to **tolerate** this situation any longer.  
 A. look down on      B. put up with      C. take away from      D. give on to
3. I clearly remember talking to him in **a chance** meeting last summer.  
 A. unplanned      B. deliberate      C. accidental      D. unintentional
4. I could see the finish line and thought I was **home and dry**.  
 A. hopeless      B. hopeful      C. successful      D. unsuccessful
5. The International Organizations are going to be in a **temporary** way in the country.  
 A. soak      B. permanent      C. complicated      D. guess
6. The US troops are using much more **sophisticated** weapons in the Far East.  
 A. expensive      B. complicated  
 C. simple and easy to use      D. difficult to operate
7. She had a **cozy** little apartment in Boston.  
 A. uncomfortable      B. warm      C. lazy      D. dirty
8. Global warming is one of the **major** problem facing our planet.  
 A. common      B. minor      C. important      D. serious
9. She was given a prize for her **achievement** in classical and traditional music.  
 A. success      B. accomplishment      C. failure      D. feat
10. Fruit and vegetables grew in **abundance** on the island. The islanders even exported the surplus.  
 A. large quantity      B. small quantity      C. excess      D. sufficiency
11. They need **cut back on** eating a lot of salt and sugary food. They're not good for their health.  
 A. begin      B. reduce      C. increase      D. carry out
12. Population growth rates **vary** among regions and even among countries within the same region.  
 A. restrain      B. unchange      C. remain unstable      D. fluctuate
13. I love going to this place as it has the most **beautiful** scenery in the city.  
 A. light      B. huge      C. dark      D. unattractive
14. He decided not to buy the **fake** watch and wait until he had more money.  
 A. authentic      B. forger      C. faulty      D. original
15. Her father likes the head cabbage **rare**.  
 A. over-boiled      B. precious      C. scarce      D. scare
16. Certain courses are compulsory; others are **optional**.  
 A. voluntary      B. free      C. pressure      D. mandatory
17. We ought to keep these proposals **secret** from the chairman for the time being.  
 A. lively      B. frequented      C. accessible      D. revealed
18. I'm very much interested in learning more about ecotourism and its **benefits**.  
 A. disadvantages      B. advantages      C. dangers      D. problem
19. There has been **insufficient** rainfall over the past two years, and farmers are having trouble.  
 A. adequate      B. unsatisfactory      C. abundant      D. dominant
20. Now, when so many frogs were killed, there were **more and more** insects.  
 A. lesser and lesser      B. fewer and fewer      C. lesser and fewer      D. less and less

21. Certain courses are **compulsory**; others are optional.  
 A. voluntary                      B. free                              C. pressure                      D. mandatory
22. We offer a speedy and **secure** service of transferring money in less than 24 hours.  
 A. uninterested                      B. unsure                              C. slow                              D. open
23. The Red Cross is an international humanitarian agency dedicated to reducing the **sufferings** of wounded soldiers, civilians and prisoners of war.  
 A. worry and sadness                      B. pain and sorrow                      C. loss                              D. happiness
24. After five days on trial, the court found him **innocent** of the crime and he was released.  
 A. innovative                      B. naïve                              C. guilty                              D. benevolent
25. Mr. Brown is a very **generous** old man. He has given most of his wealth to a charity organization.  
 A. hospitable                      B. honest                              C. kind                              D. mean
26. In the first two decades of its existence, the cinema developed **rapidly**.  
 A. leisurely                      B. sluggishly                              C. weakly                              D. shortly
27. The earth is being **threatened** and the future looks bad.  
 A. done                              B. made                              C. defended                              D. varied
28. Thousands are going **starving** because of the failure of this year's harvest.  
 A. hungry                              B. poor                              C. rich                              D. full
29. I'd like to **pay some money into** my bank account.  
 A. withdraw some money from                      B. put some money into  
 C. give some money out                      D. leave some money aside
30. His policies were **beneficial** to the economy as a whole.  
 A. harmless                              B. crude                              C. detrimental                              D. innocent
31. The doctor advised Peter to **give up** smoking.  
 A. stop                              B. continue                              C. finish                              D. consider
32. **Advanced** students need to be aware of the important of collocation.  
 A. of high level                      B. of great important                      C. of low level                      D. of steady progress
33. **Affluent** families find it easier to support their children financially.  
 A. Wealthy                              B. Well-off                              C. Privileged                              D. Poor
34. A frightening number of **illiterate** students are graduating from college.  
 A. able to read and write                      B. able to join intramural sport  
 C. inflexible                              D. unable to pass an examination in reaing and writing
35. There should be new measures to **discourage** car use in favor of public transport.  
 A. prevent                              B. encourage                              C. disapprove                              D. disconnect

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 27:  
CÂU CÓ CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP**

**BT. Chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi cuộc hội thoại ngắn dưới đây**

1. **“What an attractive hair style you have got, Mary!” - “\_\_\_\_\_.”**  
A. Thank you very much. I am afraid.                      B. You are telling a lie.  
C. Thank you for your compliment.                      D. I don't like your sayings.
2. **“You look great in this new dress.” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. With pleasure.                      B. Not at all.  
C. I am glad you like it.                      D. Do not say anything about it.
3. **“How well you are playing!” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. Say it again. I like to hear your words.                      B. I think so. I am proud of myself.  
C. Thank you too much.                      D. Many thanks. That is a nice compliment.
4. **“Thanks for the nice gift you brought to us!” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. Actually speaking, I myself don't like it.                      B. Welcome! It's very nice of you.  
C. All right. Do you know how much it cost?                      D. Not at all. Don't mention it.
5. **“Would you like a drink?” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. I don't like coffee.                      B. I prefer tea.  
C. Coffee, please.                      D. I'm very thirsty.
6. **“How much was your new shirt?” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. It's a red shirt.                      B. It's very cheap.  
C. It was in a shop.                      D. I love it much.
7. **How long does it take to get to Dave's place from your flat?” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. It's a long way.                      B. About one kilometer.  
C. Thirty five minutes.                      D. No. It's faster if you fly there.
8. **“Do you find it very interesting to travel alone?” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. Yes, you're welcome.                      B. Never mind.  
C. No, not at all.                      D. It's exciting.
9. **“Would you like to have dinner with me?” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. Yes, it is.                      B. Yes, so do I.  
C. I'm very happy.                      D. Yes, I'd love to.
10. **Can you tell me the way to the nearest post office? - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. Turn left and then right.                      B. It's about two kilometers.  
C. It opens at nine o'clock.                      D. You can walk or go there by taxi.
11. **“Do you mind if I borrow a chair?” - “\_\_\_\_\_”. Do you need only one?”**  
A. I'm sorry.                      B. Not at all.  
C. Yes, I do.                      D. Yes, I would.
12. **“It's my sister's birthday tomorrow.” - “\_\_\_\_\_”.**  
A. How old are they?                      B. What a good idea!  
C. Happy New Year!                      D. Is she going to have a party?
13. **“Thank you for taking the time to come here in person.” - “\_\_\_\_\_.”**  
A. It's my pleasure.                      B. I don't know what time that person comes.  
C. I'd love to come. What time?                      D. Do you have time for some gossip?
14. **“I have a terrible headache.” - “\_\_\_\_\_”**  
A. Maybe I'm not going to the doctor's.                      B. Not very well. Thanks.  
C. Maybe you should take a rest.                      D. Not bad. I'm going to the doctor's.
15. **“What's the best place to eat lunch?” - “\_\_\_\_\_.”**  
A. I'll have soup, please.                      B. There's a great restaurant at the corner of the street.  
C. I usually eat lunch at twelve.                      D. Twelve would be convenient.
16. **“You're so patient with us.” - “\_\_\_\_\_.”**

- A. Thanks, that's nice of you to say so.                      B. Thanks. Have a nice trip.  
 C. I'm fine, thanks.    D. I know. I have trouble controlling my temper.
- 17. "Your boss looks like the aggressive type." - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. Yes, he really wants to get ahead.                      B. Yes, he's quite gentle.  
 C. Really? I've never seen him lie.                      D. Right. He's so quiet.
- 18. "Why did you turn the air conditioner on?" - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. I think it's bad condition.                      B. I can't see anything.  
 C. It's a little hot in here.                      D. It's a good idea.
- 19. "There's a baseball game tonight." - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. Let's go.                      B. I'm not a real fan of hers.  
 C. Don't mention it.                      D. Thanks, I'd love to.
- 20. "\_\_\_\_\_ " - "Yes. I do. I like them a lot."**  
 A. What do you think of tennis.                      B. Do you like sports?  
 C. Do you prefer tennis or badminton?                      D. How often you play tennis?
- 21. "\_\_\_\_\_ " - "No, I'm not. I feel awful."**  
 A. How are you?                      B. Are you feeling OK?  
 C. Is there anything wrong?                      D. What's the matter?
- 22. "Where will you go on vacation?" - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. Probably to the beach.                      B. The beach is nice, isn't it?  
 C. Probably I won't think of.                      D. I have a four-day vacation.
- 23. "\_\_\_\_\_." - "I think the vase is broken."**  
 A. Can I help you?                      B. Why is it so expensive?  
 C. What is it?                      D. What's wrong with it?
- 24. "\_\_\_\_\_ " - "No, I don't play the piano."**  
 A. What kind of music do you like?                      B. Do you play the piano?  
 C. Do you earn a lot by playing the piano?                      D. What kind of music do you like?
- 25. "Will the maths teacher give us a test this week?" - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. I doubt whether it's easy.                      B. Yes, the test was difficult.  
 C. I don't think he will come.                      D. No, he probably won't.
- 26. "\_\_\_\_\_." - "Oh, but it's boring?"**  
 A. Don't you like the news?                      B. Would you prefer news to films?  
 C. I think you should watch the news.                      D. You often watch the news, don't you?
- 27. "I think the new resort will ruin the environment." - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. I'm afraid so.                      B. Don't you think so?  
 C. I agree. It sounds nice.                      D. Let's go there.
- 28. "I've got two tickets for the show." - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. Oh, anything else? Thanks.                      B. I can afford the tickets.  
 C. That's great. When is it?                      D. Oh, let's go and get the tickets.
- 29. "I think golf is really great." - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. Do you? I think it's boring.                      B. Don't you believe so?  
 C. Neither do I.                      D. Almost every day.
- 30. "I don't think we should exercise late at night." - "\_\_\_\_\_."**  
 A. Neither do I.                      B. So do I.  
 C. I think so, too.                      D. I don't neither.
- 31. "I hear The Golden Bride is a very good film." - "\_\_\_\_\_."**





**BT 1. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

From the start of his career as a writer, Mark Twain was fascinated with inventions. As a result, he chose to spend much of his available income on various types of inventions, generally without much success. In fact, he lost most of the money he invested. By 1887, the 49-year-old author had invested most of his money in one project, the Paige typesetting machine.

Twain expected the Paige machine to be completed in 1889. Unfortunately, the machine was never completely finished, and by the early 1890s, Twain knew he was in a serious financial situation. He worked hard to take care of his problems by producing a number of books **in a row**. He wrote *A Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur's Court* (1892), *An American Claimant* (1892), *Tom Sawyer Abroad* (1893), and *Pudd'nhead Wilson* (1894). However, all of these works did not solve his financial problems, and he was forced to declare bankruptcy.

1. This passage mainly discusses how an author \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. invested poorly in inventions                      B. wrote so many books  
C. created his famous works                          D. created a successful invention
2. According to the passage, what interested Mark Twain?  
A. giving investment advice                          B. work as a typesetter  
C. the world of banking                                  D. new ideas and products
3. Where was the majority of Twain's money in 1887?  
A. in a bank account                                    B. invested in various inventions  
C. invested in one invention                          D. invested in his writings
4. It can be inferred from the passage that the Paige machine was \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. created by Mark Twain                              B. ready in the 1890s  
C. close to being completed                          D. a great success
5. Look at the expression "**in a row**" in paragraph 2. This expression could be best replaced by \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one after another                                    B. very quickly  
C. on time    D. in a straight line

**BT 2. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Coca Cola is a popular drink for people all over the world. At first, very few people drank Coca Cola, but now it is sold in more than 160 countries. More than 1,6 billion gallons are sold every year. Coca Cola was invented by Dr John Pemberton in Atlanta on 8 May, 1886. However, the name Coca Cola was given by Frank Robinson, one of Dr Pemberton's partners. Later, in 1888, the business was sold to another man, Asa Candler. He opened his first factory to produce this drink in 1895 in Dallas, Texas. Since then, a great quantity of Coca Cola has been produced there.

Since 1982, a special kind of Coca Cola has been made for overweight people - diet Coke. They have used many clever advertisements to increase the amount of Coca Cola sold every year.

Besides Coca Cola, there are many other drinks of the same kind sold all over the world such as Pepsi Cola, Sp - Cola and Dr People. However Coca Cola is the most popular People drink Coca Cola with their meals. when they are thirsty or when they socialise with friends. It is certain that more and more people will drink Coca Cola all over the world in this century.

1. Coca Cola was first made \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in the USA                      B. in England                      C. in Australia                      D. in Canada
- 2 The name Coca Cola was given to the drink by \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. Dr Pemberton      B. Asa Candler      C. Frank Robinson      D. Dr Pepper
3. Every year, people all over the world drink about \_\_\_\_\_ gallons of Coca Cola.  
 A. 1,6 million      B. 1,6 billion      C. 16 million      D. 16 trillion
4. Diet Coke is used for \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
 A. fat      B. sick      C. thin      D. small
5. Coca Cola is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. more popular than other drinks of the same kind  
 B. less popular than other drinks of the same kind  
 C. as popular as Sp Cola  
 D. as not popular as other drinks of the same kind

**BT 3. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Scientists are trying to make the deserts into good land again. They want to bring water to the deserts, so people can live and grow foods. They are learning a lot about the deserts. But more and more of the earth is becoming deserts all the time. Scientists may not change the desert in time.

Why is more and more land becoming deserts? Scientists think that people make deserts. People are doing bad things to the earth.

Some places on the earth don't have very much rain. But they still don't become deserts. This is because some green plants are growing there. Small green plants and grass are very important to dry places. Plants don't let the hot sun make the earth even drier. Plants don't let the wind blow the soil away. When a little rain falls, the plants hold the water. Without plants, the land can become a desert much more easily.

- According to the passage, deserts \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. can all be turned into good land soon  
 B. never have any plants or animals in them  
 C. get very little rain  
 D. are made by people
- The underlined word "They" in the passage refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. scientists      B. deserts      C. people      D. foods
- Small green plants are very important to dry places because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. they develop together with grass  
 B. they let the sun make the earth even drier  
 C. they don't help to hold the water  
 D. they don't let the wind blow the earth away
- Land is becoming deserts little by little because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. there is not enough rain  
 B. people don't do what scientists wish them to do  
 C. plants can't grow there  
 D. scientists know little about the deserts
- After reading this, we learn that \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. plants can keep dry land from becoming deserts  
 B. it is good to get rid of the grass in the deserts  
 C. all places without much rain will become deserts  
 D. it is better to grow crops on dry land than to grow grass

**BT 4. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Helen Keller was a very bright and beautiful girl. At the age of six months she could already say a few words. But before she was two years old, she was badly ill. She could not see or hear, and soon she could not even talk. Since then Helen had to fight for what she wanted.

When she was six, her parents invited a teacher for her. With the help of the teacher, she began to see and hear the world around her through her hands. She learned to read the books for the blind. The teacher took Helen for long walks, and told her about all the beautiful sights. Helen touched flowers, climbed trees and smelt a storm before it came. She also learned how to swim and ride a horse.

After she grew up, she became a famous writer in America. Her first and most famous book is *The Story of My Life*. Her story brought new hope to many blind and deaf people. It gave light to those in darkness and encouraged them to live and work.

1. When could Helen Keller already say a few words?  
A. at the age of two  
B. at the age of a year and a half  
C. at the age of six months  
D. when she was six years old
2. Why couldn't Helen see or hear later?  
A. Helen was badly ill.  
B. She had a traffic accident.  
C. Helen was very tired.  
D. She became very lazy.
3. How could Helen begin to see and hear the world around her?  
A. with the help of her father  
B. through her feet  
C. with the help of her parents  
D. with the help of her teacher
4. After Helen grew up, she became a famous \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. doctor  
B. scientist  
C. singer  
D. writer
5. What gave light to those in darkness and encouraged them to live and work?  
A. their teacher's help  
B. Helen's story  
C. their parents' help  
D. Helen's songs

**BT 5. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Modern life is impossible without travelling. The fastest way of travelling is by air. With a modern airliner you can travel in one day to places which it took a month or more to get to a hundred years ago.

Travelling by train is slower than by air, but it has its advantages. You can see the country you are travelling through. Modern trains have comfortable seats and dining cars. **They** make even the longest journey enjoyable.

Some people prefer to travel by sea when it is possible. There are large liners and river boats. You can visit many other countries and different places. Travelling by sea is a very pleasant way to spend a holiday.

Many people like to travel by car. You can make your own timetable. You can travel three or four hundred miles or only fifty or one hundred miles a day, just as you like. You can stop wherever you wish - where there is something interesting to see, at a good restaurant where you can enjoy a good meal, or at a hotel to spend the night. That is why travelling by car is popular for pleasure trips, while people usually take a train or a plane when they are travelling on business.

1. From the passage we know the fastest way of travelling is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. by car  
B. by train  
C. by air  
D. by sea

2. If we travel by car, we can \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. make the longest journey enjoyable
  - B. make our own timetable
  - C. travel to a very far place in several minutes
  - D. travel only fifty or one hundred miles a day
3. The underlined word "**They**" in the passage refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. modern trains in the country
  - B. the travellers on the modern trains
  - C. the slower ways of travelling
  - D. comfortable seats and dining cars
4. When people travel on business, they usually take \_\_\_\_\_.
 

A. a train or a plane	B. a boat or a train
C. a plane or a car	D. a car or a boat
5. How many ways of travelling are mentioned in the passage?
 

A. three	B. four	C. five	D. six
----------	---------	---------	--------

**BT 6. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Moscow, the capital of Russia, is located in the far western part of the Country. Since it was first mentioned in the chronicles of 1147, Moscow has played a **vital** role in Russian history. It became the capital of Muscovy (the Grand Principality of Moscow) in the late 13th century, hence, the people of Moscow are known as Muscovites. Today Moscow is not only the political centre of Russia but also the country's most **populous** city and its industrial, cultural, scientific, and educational capital. For more than 600 years Moscow also has been the spiritual centre of the Russian Orthodox Church .

The capital of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U.S.S.R.) until the Union dissolved in 1991, Moscow attracted world attention as a centre of Communist power; indeed , the name of the seat of the former Soviet government and the successor Russian government, the Kremlin, was a synonym for Soviet authority. The dissolution of the U.S.S.R. brought tremendous economic and political change , along with a significant Concentration of Russia's wealth, into Moscow .

1. Where is Moscow located?
 

A. far western part	B. far eastern part	C. southern part	D. northern part
---------------------	---------------------	------------------	------------------
2. The word "**vital**" can best be replaced by \_\_\_\_\_.
 

A. artificial	B. high	C. essential	D. big
---------------	---------	--------------	--------
3. What does the word "**populous**" mean?
 

A. charming	B. crowded	C. huge	D. magnificent
-------------	------------	---------	----------------
4. Moscow also has been the spiritual centre of the Russian Orthodox Church for?
 

A. unlimited time	B. 600 years
C. less than 600 years	D. more than 600 years
5. What was the Kremlin a synonym for?
 

A. the name of the seat	B. Russian government
C. Soviet authority	D. dissolution of the U.S.S.R.

**BT 7. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Homelessness is a problem in many big cities in the world. It occurs when a part of the population does not have any fixed place to call home. Hundreds of millions of people in the

world spend at least some time of the year homeless. **This** is an issue that the authorities are trying to deal with. However, there are more things that each person can do to help those people. One of the things that you can do to help the homeless is to volunteer your time. If you have a lot of free time, you might go on an extended trip to help set up homes or improve an impoverished area. Even with just a few hours a week, it is possible to make an impact in your own city. You can also **sign up** to help at a local soup kitchen: most cities have a mission of some kind helping food to the homeless and offering temporary shelter.

- Homelessness occurs when a part of the population doesn't not have any \_\_\_\_\_ to call home.  
A. great place      B. convenient place      C. fixed place      D. good place
- What does the word "**This**" refer to?  
A. Some time      B. Homeless      C. Authority      D. Each person
- If you gave a lot of free time, you might \_\_\_\_\_ to help the homeless.  
A. go on an extended trip      B. go on a holiday  
C. donate money      D. donate clothes
- The phrase "**sign up**" can best be replaced?  
A. list      B. dedicate      C. promise      D. register
- Most cities have a mission of offering \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. jobs      B. temporary shelter      C. allowance      D. education

**BT 8. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

I was born in Newcastle, a city in the North East of England. Newcastle is on the bank of the River Tyne. It is quite big, with a population of about 200.000 people. There is a cathedral and a university. There are five bridges over the River Tyne, which link Newcastle to the next town, Gates head, where there is one of the biggest shopping centers in the world.

A few years ago, the main industries were shipping and coal mining, but now the chemical and soap industries are more important.

I left Newcastle ten years ago but I often return. I miss the people, who are very friendly, and I miss the beautiful countryside near the city, where there are so many hills and streams.

People who are born near the River Tyne have a special name. They are called "Geodies". I am very pleased to be called a "Geodies".

- Where is Newcastle?  
A. in the North East of England.      B. the River Tyne  
C. England      D. America.
- How many people are there in Newcastle?  
A. 200.000.      B. over 200.000.      C. about 200.000      D. nearly 200.000
- What were the main industries in Newcastle a few years ago?  
A. chemical      B. chemical and soap.  
C. shipping.      D. shipping and coal mining.
- What are the people in Newcastle like?  
A. beautiful.      B. wonderful      C. friendly.      D. nice.
- What are the people who are born near the River Tyne called?  
A. Geody.      B. friendly.      C. the Geodies.      D. Geodies

**BT 9. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Brazil, the largest country in South America and the fifth largest country in the world, is located in the eastern half of South America. The people of Brazil are famous for their outgoing, friendly, and fun-loving nature. Brazilian women are considered to be among the best dressed in the world.

Brazil is a federal republic with 23 states. The capital city is Brasilia. Portuguese is the official language and it is spoken with a distinct Brazilian accent. Brazil has population of over 138 million, which is made of people of many different races and ethnic groups.

A number of industrial products are produced in Brazil, including cars, chemicals, ships, machines and military weapons. Mining is also an important industry. Agriculture is another important industry. Many crops are exported including coffee (Brazil is the largest coffee grower in the world), cotton, soybeans, sugar, cocoa, **rice**, corn and fruit.

1. Where is Brazil located?

- A. in the eastern half of South America                      B. in the southern half of South America  
C. in the western half of South America                    D. in the eastern half of North America

2. Who are considered to be among the best dressed in the world?

- A. Brazilian men                      B. Brazilians                      C. Americans                      D. Brazilian women

3. How are the people of Brazil?

- A. outgoing, famous and natural                      B. outgoing, friendly and natural  
C. outgoing, friendly and fun-loving                      D. famous, friendly and fun-loving

4. The word “**rice**” in line 11 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. A kind of vegetables                      B. A kind of food  
C. A kind of meat                      D. A kind of drinks

5. What is the most significant agricultural product in Brazil?

- A. cocoa                      B. coffee                      C. corn                      D. cotton

**BT 10. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Sydney is Australia’s most exciting city. The history of Australia begins here. In 1788 Captain Arthur Philips arrived in Sydney with 11 ships and 1624 passengers from Britain (including 770 prisoners). Today there are about 3.6 million people in Sydney. It is the biggest city in Australia, the busiest port in the South Pacific and one of the most beautiful cities in the world. In Sydney, the buildings are higher, the colors are brighter and the nightlife is more exciting. There are over 20 excellent beaches close to Sydney and its warm climate and cool winter have made it a favorite city for immigrants from overseas. There are two things that make Sydney famous: its beautiful harbor, the Sydney Harbor Bridge, which was built in 1932 and the Sydney Opera House, which was opened in 1973.

1. Where did Captain Arthur Philips arrive in 1788?

- A. South Pacific                      B. Sydney Harbor                      C. Britain                      D. Sydney

2. Which of the following should be the title of the reading passage?

- A. Sydney’s Opera House                      B. The history of Sydney  
C. Sydney’s beaches and harbors                      D. An introduction of Sydney

3. Which of the following statements is NOT true about Sydney?

- A. Sydney is not a favorite city for immigrants from overseas.  
B. Sydney is one of the most beautiful cities in the world.  
C. Sydney is the most exciting city in Australia.  
D. Sydney is the biggest port in the South Pacific.

4. How many beaches are there close to Sydney?

- A. 11 beaches                      B. over 20 beaches                      C. nearly 20 beaches                      D. 770 beaches

5. When was the Sydney Harbor Bridge built?

- A. 1788                      B. 1973                      C. 1932                      D. 1625

**BT 11. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

In order to stay healthy it is important to have a balanced diet. We should eat enough three main groups of food. These groups are protein, carbohydrate and fat.

Proteins are very important for building our body. They help us to build new cells as old ones die. Meat and milk products are major sources of protein. We can also get protein from fish, eggs and beans.

Carbohydrate and fat are important to enable us to store energy. Carbohydrates are found in sugar and in cereals. Fat can be found in vegetable oil, in butter and in nuts.

Our body also needs minerals, such as iron and calcium and vitamins. Fish, vegetables and milk contain most of the minerals we need. Vitamins are found in fresh vegetables and fruit.

1. According to the passage, a balanced diet \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. contains lots of fruit and vegetables      B. is high in protein  
C. is needed for good health                      D. is rich in minerals and vitamins
2. Proteins \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. can be gotten from rice                              B. produce meat and milk  
C. can only be found in meat                              D. help our body build new cells
3. We can get fat from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sugar                      B. vegetables                      C. butter                      D. cereals
4. Carbohydrates \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. are not found in rice and cornmeal                      B. allow the body to store energy  
C. are the most important of three groups of food                      D. supply a lot of protein
5. Which of the following is NOT true?  
A. Vitamins are not necessary for our body.  
B. Iron and calcium are also essential for good health.  
C. Fish contain both protein and mineral.  
D. It's important to eat a balanced diet.

**BT 12. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

In the USA, people celebrate Mother's day and Father's day. Mother's day is celebrated on the second Sunday in May. On this occasion, mother usually receives greeting cards and gifts from her husband and children. The best gifts of all, American Mom are a day of leisure. The majority of American mothers have outside jobs as well as housework, so their working days are often very hard. Flower is an important part of Mother's day. Mothers are often given a gift for the occasion, particularly if they are elderly.

Father's day is celebrated throughout the USA and Canada on the third Sunday in June. The holiday customs are similar to Mother's day. Dad also receives greeting cards and gifts from his family and enjoys a day of leisure.

1. Where do people celebrate Father's day and Mother's day?  
A. In Viet Nam.      B. In the world.      C. In many countries.      D. In the USA
2. When is Mother's day celebrated?  
A. On the second Sunday in May.                      B. On the third Sunday in June.  
C. October 2nd                      D. March 8th
3. Do the majority of American mothers have to work hard every day?  
A. No, they only do the housework.                      B. No, they don't have a job  
C. Yes, they do.                      D. No, they don't.
4. What is an important part of Mother's day?  
A. Gift                      B. Present                      C. Flower                      D. All are correct.
5. Where is Father's day celebrated?  
A. In the USA and Canada.                      B. No information

C. In the world.

D. In many countries.

**BT 13. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi sau**

Almost all our energy comes from oil, coal, and natural gas. We call them fossil fuels. The earth's fossil fuels are running out. What will happen when there is no oil, coal and gas on the earth? Scientists are trying to find and use other alternative sources of energy. We can use energy from the sun, the wind, and the water. Solar energy is unlimited. The sun supplies all the energy used to grow plants, to evaporate water for rain, and to maintain the temperature of the planet. All are necessary for human life. If we are able to collect solar energy, we will be sure to have this **abundant** source of power.

Another source of energy from nature is the wind. Wind power is clean and plentiful. Energy from the wind has been used for centuries to move ships, grind grain, pump water and do other kinds of work. In more recent time, wind power has been used to generate electricity.

Water can also provide power. For a long time, people have used water to power machines. Some early uses of water power were to mill grain, saw wood and power machinery for the textile industry. Today water power is mostly used to generate electricity.

1. The fossil fuel on Earth are \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. unlimited            B. being used up            C. renewable            D. not used now

2. Solar energy means the power from the \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. fossil fuel            B. temperature            C. electricity            D. sun

3. The word "**abundant**" in the passage is closest in meaning with \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. limited            B. natural            C. plentiful            D. necessary

4. Centuries ago, people used wind power to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. get water from underground            B. grow plants  
C. maintain the earth's temperature            D. generate electricity

5. Nowadays water energy is mainly used to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. power machinery            B. mill grain            C. saw wood            D. generate electricity

**BT 14. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

The coronavirus is a kind of virus. Viruses are tiny germs that are so small that you can't see them. They are so (1) \_\_\_\_\_ that they can float through the air in tiny drops of water, and they can sit on your skin without you feeling them. If some of these germs get inside you, they can use your body to make more germs, and that can make you ill.

There are lots of different sorts (2) \_\_\_\_\_ coronaviruses and some of them infect people. If you have been infected with one of these coronaviruses, all you probably (3) \_\_\_\_\_ was a snotty nose or a cough.

But when this completely new coronavirus germ gets inside a human body, it causes (4) \_\_\_\_\_ illness called COVID-19. When people talk about "catching the coronavirus", they are talking about this illness. Because this coronavirus is new, scientists don't know everything about it yet. But they think that there are two main (5) \_\_\_\_\_ that people can catch it.

1. A. big            B. small            C. light            D. heavy

2. A. about            B. for            C. with            D. of

3. A. had            B. made            C. took            D. caught

4. A. a            B. an            C. the            D. Ø

5. A. roads            B. ways            C. behaviours            D. habits

**BT 15. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

Nowadays more and more people are moving to live in the cities because of the facilities that they find there. Many people prefer living in cities (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the opportunities of jobs, market

places, big houses and buildings including schools and hospitals. But as the population in the city increases, the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of cars, raw materials and others increases too. All this contributes to the pollution of the city and increases the size of the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ faced by individuals. Our problems in the city contribute to the destruction of the city and the spread of corruption. Also, these problems are (4) \_\_\_\_\_ an atmosphere of discomfort and the inability of the individual to adapt and live in peace in his home town. However, there are many solutions (5) \_\_\_\_\_ can be used and applied to contribute to reducing the number of problems, such as increasing the number of police members, providing employment opportunities and spreading awareness among members of the society.

- |                  |              |                |                 |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. because of | B. because   | C. in spite of | D. with         |
| 2. A. selling    | B. buying    | C. consumption | D. conservation |
| 3. A. harms      | B. problems  | C. troubles    | D. damages      |
| 4. A. making     | B. producing | C. generating  | D. creating     |
| 5. A. that       | B. what      | C. this        | D. whether      |

**BT 16. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

Most people enjoy listening to music but few realise the important and largely positive effects it can have on us. We know that certain (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of music are used to influence our emotions and our behaviour. For example, airlines use soothing music before a flight to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ passengers, especially those who may feel nervous about flying. You may have noticed how shops often play fast, rousing music (if you haven't noticed, you probably shop at the more old-fashioned type of store) - this tends to make us feel (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and more likely to spend money!

Music is also being used now as a psychiatric therapy. It seems to be particularly (4) \_\_\_\_\_ for eating disorders and addictions, but also for sufferers of post-traumatic stress syndrome. People attending group therapy sessions are invited to bring along their favourite tracks. Not everyone does, but those (5) \_\_\_\_\_ do so play them for the group. This creates a sense of belonging, as well as a more relaxed atmosphere for the therapy session.

- |                      |                  |             |             |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. forms          | B. types         | C. brands   | D. manners  |
| 2. A. relax          | B. speed up      | C. cheer up | D. irritate |
| 3. A. more confident | B. less negative | C. happier  | D. funnier  |
| 4. A. practical      | B. convenient    | C. caring   | D. useful   |
| 5. A. who            | B. whom          | C. which    | D. what     |

**BT 17. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

There can't be many people who are unaware of e-mail, even if they have never actually sent one. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ there are some similarities between e-mail and letters, there are also many differences. The first is that e-mail is delivered instantly, so it can be a very effective means of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ when speed is important. This speed means that e-mail is more practical for communicating over large distances. Another difference is that e-mail tends to be relatively informal. People are much more (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to use language which they would consider unsuitable for a formal letter. Words spelled incorrectly in an e-mail are less likely to be checked than in a letter. One explanation for this is that (4) \_\_\_\_\_ e-mail seems to be less permanent than something written on paper. We can be sure that the future development of e-mail will have all kinds of (5) \_\_\_\_\_ effects on the way we communicate.

- |                     |               |               |                  |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. Besides       | B. Since      | C. Although   | D. Even          |
| 2. A. communication | B. transport  | C. travelling | D. entertainment |
| 3. A. possible      | B. probable   | C. capable    | D. likely        |
| 4. A. a             | B. an         | C. the        | D. Ø             |
| 5. A. expected      | B. unexpected | C. expecting  | D. unexpectedly  |

**BT 18. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

SARS (*Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome*) is a deadly disease. Science haven't found the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of this disease. SARS is dangerous because it develops quickly. Patients normally (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a high fever, a sore throat, and cough. Their body temperature is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ 38°C.

Antibiotics cannot cure SARS, and scientists are looking for a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to prevent the disease. Before they can find one, it is important to have a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle. You should keep fit, have plenty of fresh air, and eat lot foods with vitamin C.

- |                 |          |            |            |
|-----------------|----------|------------|------------|
| 1. A. reason    | B. cause | C. source  | D. ground  |
| 2. A. make      | B. take  | C. have    | D. receive |
| 3. A. above     | B. below | C. more    | D. on      |
| 4. A. treatment | B. cure  | C. tablet  | D. vaccine |
| 5. A. healthy   | B. rich  | C. wealthy | D. strong  |

**BT 19. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

People often wonder whether they should choose to play a team sport or an individual sport. It really depends (1) \_\_\_\_\_ what kind of person you are. In reality, the importance is finding what suits you best.

To begin with, team sports, like football and basketball, can be great fun. You have the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to be the others as you practice and play together as a team. You learn to work with others, which teaches you to be more patient and understanding, In addition, you can share your successes and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ with your team.

On the other hand, individual sports, such as tennis and athletics, can help you feel proud of yourself and give you great satisfaction (4) \_\_\_\_\_ you depend mainly on your own effort and determination. Finally, in individual sports, you set (5) \_\_\_\_\_ goals, which help you become more self-confident and independent.

- |                |            |                |               |
|----------------|------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. in       | B. on      | C. with        | D. from       |
| 2. A. change   | B. idea    | C. opportunity | D. difficulty |
| 3. A. failures | B. to fail | C. failed      | D. fail       |
| 4. A. so       | B. despite | C. because     | D. although   |
| 5. A. your     | B. one's   | C. yours       | D. one        |

**BT 20. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

There is only one ocean. It (1) \_\_\_\_\_ into five different parts: the Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Antarctic and Arctic Oceans. There are also many other smaller seas, gulfs and bays (2) \_\_\_\_\_ form part of them. Altogether they cover seventy-five percent of the Earth's surface. For centuries, people (3) \_\_\_\_\_ challenged by the mysteries that lie beneath the ocean. However, today's scientists have overcome many of the challenges of the depth by (4) \_\_\_\_\_ modern devices. They send submarines to investigate the seabed and bring samples of marine life back to the surface for further study. Satellite photographs provide a wide (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of information, including water temperature, depth and undersea populations. If modern technology did not exist, we would never have such precious information.

- |                |              |              |               |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. cut      | B. put       | C. taken     | D. divided    |
| 2. A. which    | B. who       | C. where     | D. whose      |
| 3. A. has been | B. has to be | C. have been | D. have to be |
| 4. A. use      | B. using     | C. used      | D. to use     |
| 5. A. branch   | B. volume    | C. distance  | D. range      |

**BT 21. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

Sydney is Australia's most exciting city. The (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of Australia begins here. In

1788 Captain Arthur Philips arrived in Sydney with 11 ships and in 1624 passengers from Britain (including 770 prisoners). Today there are about 3.6 million people (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Sydney. It is the biggest city in Australia, the busiest port in the South Pacific and one of the most (3) \_\_\_\_\_ cities in the world. In Sydney, the buildings are higher, the colors are brighter and the nightlife is more exciting. There are over 20 excellent beaches close to Sydney and its warm (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and cool winter have made it a favorite city for immigrants from overseas. There are two things that make Sydney famous: its beautiful (5) \_\_\_\_\_, the Sydney Harbour Bridge, which was built in 1932 and the Sydney Opera House, which was opened in 1973.

- |               |                |                   |                 |
|---------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. history | B. historicist | C. historical     | D. historically |
| 2. A. at      | B. on          | C. in             | D. of           |
| 3. A. beauty  | B. beautify    | C. beautification | D. beautiful    |
| 4. A. weather | B. climate     | C. air            | D. atmosphere   |
| 5. A. harbour | B. river       | C. mountain       | D. plateau      |

**BT 22. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

**CULTURE SHOCK**

Many people dream of living in a foreign country. It can be an amazing experience for those (1) \_\_\_\_\_ are willing to settle down in a new place. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, there's one potential problem you should be aware of: culture shock. Culture shock is the feeling we - get from living in a place that is so different to where we grew up that we are not sure (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to deal with it. Societies are (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in many different ways. Customs and traditions can be very different and that can sometimes make it difficult to get on with local people who might not approve of things you do and might object to things you say. You might be banned from doing things in another country that are perfectly legal in your own. For example, in Singapore people can be forced to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a large fine just for dropping rubbish. Eventually, though, most people who live abroad fall in love with their adopted country and learn to accept its differences.

- |                 |               |                 |              |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. who       | B. which      | C. what         | D. whose     |
| 2. A. Therefore | B. However    | C. Although     | D. Moreover  |
| 3. A. what      | B. when       | C. how          | D. why       |
| 4. A. organize  | B. organizing | C. organization | D. organized |
| 5. A. spend     | B. waste      | C. pay          | D. borrow    |

**BT 23. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

Doing regular exercise or playing sports can be dangerous, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ if you are over 40. This is why it is a very good idea to see your doctor (2) \_\_\_\_\_ starting if you think you are not very fit. Some people try to do exercise or play sports too vigorously too soon, and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ they cause themselves injuries which can take a long time to heal.

However, it is not only older people who should take care. Doctors report many injuries such as backaches, sprained ankles and pulled muscles, which can all be (4) \_\_\_\_\_ if a little care is taken. If you do injure yourself, rest for a while to allow your body to recover naturally. Above all, don't push yourself because you think it is doing you good. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you could do yourself permanent damage.

- |                   |            |                  |               |
|-------------------|------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. as          | B. even    | C. only          | D. especially |
| 2. A. after       | B. before  | C. until         | D. while      |
| 3. A. as a result | B. despite | C. in order that | D. otherwise  |
| 4. A. doubled     | B. avoided | C. increasing    | D. landing    |

5. A. In addition                      B. On the contrary      C. By the way                      D. As usual

**BT 24. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

Drought is a condition that becomes when average rainfall for a fertile area drops far below the normal (1)\_\_\_\_\_ for a long period of time. In areas (2)\_\_\_\_\_ are not irrigated, the lack of rain causes farm crops to wither and dead. Higher than normal temperatures usually accompany periods of drought . They add to the crop damage. Forest (3) \_\_\_\_\_ start easily during drought. The soil of a drought area becomes dry and crumbles. Often the rich topsoil is (4)\_\_\_\_\_ away by the hot, dry winds. Streams, ponds, and wells often dry up during a drought, and animals suffer and may even die (5)\_\_\_\_\_ the lack of water.

1. A. average                      B. number                      C. amount                      D. rainfall  
2. A. who                      B. what                      C. which                      D. where  
3. A. fires                      B. fogs                      C. streams                      D. boils  
4. A. to blow                      B. blew                      C. blowing                      D. blown  
5. A. because                      B. because of                      C. for                      D. as

**BT 25. Đọc đoạn văn và chọn từ/ cụm từ đúng để điền vào chỗ trống sau**

Newspapers, magazines, and books are the written media. Newspapers are one of the main sources for spreading news and events (1)\_\_\_\_\_ the world.

Radio and television supply information and (2)\_\_\_\_\_ to the public. Motion pictures are one of the most (3)\_\_\_\_\_ forms of entertainment. Movies can also teach people many other subjects.

The multimedia computer helps students learn about a particular topic in a (4)\_\_\_\_\_ of ways. When we use the Internet, we can give and get a lot of information very (5)\_\_\_\_\_.

1. A. all                      B. throughout                      C. out                      D. on  
2. A. entertain                      B. entertaining                      C. entertained                      D. entertainment  
3. A. right                      B. interested                      C. expensive                      D. popular  
4. A. variety                      B. difference                      C. change                      D. kind  
5. A. exactly                      B. correctly                      C. secretly                      D. quickly

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 29:  
CÂU ĐỒNG NGHĨA**

**Chọn đáp án diễn tả nghĩa gần giống với các câu đã cho**

**1. No other metal is as expensive as gold.**

- A. No other metal except gold is expensive.      B. Gold is expensive, and other metals are, too.  
C. Isn't gold the most expensive of all metals?      D. Gold is the most expensive of all metals.

**2. People use computers for various purposes.**

- A. Computers are being used by people for various purposes.  
B. Computers have been used by people for various purposes.  
C. Computers are used by people for various purposes.  
D. Computers will be used by people for various purposes..

**3. Sally decided not to do her homework and went to a night club.**

- A. Sally went to a night club because she didn't have any homework.  
B. Sally went to a night club instead of doing her homework.  
C. Sally was too lazy to do her homework.  
D. Sally went to a night club after doing her homework.

**4. He lost his job three months ago.**

- A. It has been three months since he has lost his job.  
B. It is three months since he lost his job.  
C. They are three months since he lost his job.  
D. It is three months ago since he lost his job.

**5. You must never take your helmet off while you are riding a motorcycle.**

- A. Helmets must be worn at all times when riding a motorcycle.  
B. You must never wear your helmet while you are riding a motorcycle.  
C. Helmets should be taken off at all times when riding a motorcycle.  
D. You must never take off your helmet .

**6. They wanted to apologize for their behavior; that's why they paid for dinner.**

- A. They felt sorry for paying for dinner.  
B. They apologize for paying for dinner.  
C. They behaved badly by paying for dinner.  
D. They paid for dinner in order to apologize for their behavior.

**7. Jerry said, "I'm studying English a lot at the moment."**

- A. Jerry said I am studying English a lot at the moment.  
B. Jerry said he is studying English a lot at the moment.  
C. Jerry said I was studying English a lot at the moment.  
D. Jerry said he was studying English a lot at the moment.

**8. When I was a child, we would go to the local park every Saturday afternoon.**

- A. When I was a child, we used to go to the local park every Saturday afternoon.  
B. When I was a child, I never went to the local park every Saturday afternoon.  
C. We are used to going to the local park every Saturday afternoon.  
D. We have been used to the local park every Saturday afternoon since I was a child.

**9. He found it extremely difficult to learn this subject.**

- A. The subject was so easy that he could learn it well.  
B. It was extremely difficult for him to learn this subject.  
C. He had difficulty finding the subject.

D. He did not find it difficult to learn this subject.

**10. Although she took a taxi, Susan arrived late for the party.**

A. Susan arrived late for the party because she didn't take a taxi.

B. Susan arrived late for the party because of the taxi.

C. In spite of taking a taxi, Susan arrived late for the party.

D. Although she took a taxi, Susan can't come to the party in time.

**11. Well, this tea is too hot for me to drink now.**

A. I wish I couldn't drink this tea.

B. I wish this tea was hot.

C. I wish this tea wouldn't be too hot.

D. I wish this tea were hot.

**12. The new hospital is bigger than the old one.**

A. The new hospital is not as big as the old one.

B. The new hospital is smaller than the old one.

C. The old hospital is more smaller than the new one.

D. The old hospital is smaller than the new one.

**13. My French friend finds driving on the left difficult.**

A. My French friend is not used to driving on the left.

B. My French friend is used to driving on the left.

C. My French friend has no problems with driving on the left.

D. My French friend had difficulty to drive on the left.

**14. "Have you seen my gloves anywhere, Eric?" asked Mrs. Noble.**

A. Mrs. Noble asked Eric if he has seen her gloves anywhere.

B. Mrs. Noble asked Eric if has he seen her gloves anywhere.

C. Mrs. Noble asked Eric if he saw her gloves anywhere.

D. Mrs. Noble asked Eric if he had seen her gloves anywhere.

**15. I don't remember that I met him in London.**

A. I remember not meeting him in London.

B. I remember to meet him in London.

C. I remember meeting him in London.

D. I don't remember meeting him in London.

**16. Mt. Everest is the highest mountain in the world. It's in the Himalayas.**

A. Mt. Everest, the highest mountain in the world, is in the Himalayas.

B. Mt. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

C. Mt. Everest is the highest mountain in the world, is in the Himalayas.

D. Mt. Everest is the highest mountain in the world, in the Himalayas.

**17. "If I were you, I would take the job," said my room-mate.**

A. My room-mate was thinking about taking the job.

B. My room-mate advised me to take the job.

C. My room-mate introduced the idea of taking the job to me.

D. My room-mate insisted on taking the job for me..

**18. "I will pay back the money, Gloria." said Ivan.**

A. Ivan apologised to Gloria for borrowing her money.

B. Ivan offered to pay Gloria the money back.

C. Ivan promised to pay back Gloria's money.

D. Ivan suggested paying back the money to Gloria.

**19. The children couldn't go swimming because the sea was too rough.**

A. The children were not calm enough to swim in the sea.

B. The sea was rough enough for the children to swim in.

C. The sea was too rough for the children to go swimming.

D. The sea was too rough to the children's swimming.

**20. "Would you like to come to my birthday party, Sarah?" asked Frederic.**

- A. Frederic invited Sarah to his birthday party.
- B. Frederic asked if Sarah was able to come to his birthday party.
- C. Frederic asked Sarah if she liked his birthday party or not.
- D. Frederic reminded Sarah of his coming birthday party.

**21. David drove so fast; it was very dangerous.**

- A. David drove so fast, which was very dangerous.
- B. David drove so fast, then was very dangerous.
- C. David drove so fast that was very dangerous.
- D. David drove so fast and was very dangerous.

**22. We've run out of tea.**

- A. There's not much more tea left.
- B. There's no tea left.
- C. We have to run out to buy some tea.
- D. We didn't have any tea.

**23. The sooner we solve this problem, the better it will be for all concerned.**

- A. If we could solve this problem soon, it would be better for all concerned.
- B. It would be better for all concerned if we can solve this problem soon.
- C. If all concerned are better, we can solve this problem soon.
- D. If we can solve this problem soon, it will be better for all concerned.

**24. "We'll go camping as long as the weather is good."**

- A. If the weather is fine, we will go camping.
- B. The weather is good when we will go camping.
- C. If the weather is better, we will go camping.
- D. We'll go camping immediately the weather is good.

**25. It is reported that the prisoners escaped by means of a helicopter.**

- A. The prisoners is reported to have escaped by means of a helicopter.
- B. The prisoners are reported to have escaped by means of a helicopter.
- C. The prisoners are reported to escape by means of a helicopter.
- D. The prisoners are reported to have been escaped by means of a helicopter.

**26. All of the students but Peter went to the meeting.**

- A. Peter went to the meeting, and so did all of the students.
- B. Except for Peter, all of the students went to the meeting.
- C. All of the students, especially Peter went to the meeting.
- D. All of the students including Peter went to the meeting.

**27. Keep silent or you'll wake the baby up.**

- A. If you don't keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
- B. If you mustn't keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
- C. If you keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
- D. If you don't keep silent, you would wake the baby up.

**28. Nam won the scholarship; he studied well.**

- A. Nam, who studied well, won the scholarship.
- B. Nam, that studied well, won the scholarship.
- C. Nam who studied well won the scholarship.
- D. Nam won the scholarship, so he studied well.

**29. I won't swim in the sea because it is too cold.**

- A. The sea isn't enough warm for us to swim in.
- B. The sea is not so warm that I can swim in.

- C. The sea is not warm for me to swim in.  
 D. The sea is not warm enough for me to swim in.
- 30. The day was so cold that we stayed indoors.**  
 A. It was such cold a day that we stayed indoors.  
 B. It was such a cold day that we stayed indoors.  
 C. It was a so cold day that we stayed indoors.  
 D. It was a cold day so that we stayed indoors.
- 31. They usually walk in the park after dinner.**  
 A. They used to walk in the park after dinner.  
 B. They are used to walking in the park after dinner.  
 C. They are used to walk in the park after dinner.  
 D. They used to walking in the park after dinner.
- 32. Although he has a lot of money, he feels unhappy.**  
 A. Despite his money, he feels unhappy.  
 B. He feels unhappy whether he has a lot of money or not.  
 C. He has a lot of unhappiness because of his money.  
 D. He has a lot of money, so he feels unhappy.
- 33. I am sorry that I didn't learn English when I was younger.**  
 A. I regret not to have learned English when I was younger.  
 B. I regret not to be learned English when I was younger.  
 C. I regretted not to learn English when I was younger.  
 D. I wish that I had learned English when I was younger.
- 34. That Hoa is lazy makes her parents sad.**  
 A. That Hoa makes her parents sad is terrible.      B. Hoa is lazy, which makes her parents sad.  
 C. Hoa who is lazy makes her parents sad.          D. Hoa is lazy which makes her parents sad.
- 35. Someone has robbed the bank near our house.**  
 A. The bank have been robbed near our house.  
 B. The bank near our house has been robbed.  
 C. The bank near our house had been robbed.  
 D. The bank near our house has robbed.
- 36. The architect designed these new flats. He has moved to Hue.**  
 A. The architect designed these new flats moved to Hue.  
 B. The architect designed these new flats has moved to Hue.  
 C. The architect who designed these new flats has moved to Hue.  
 D. The architect, that designed these new flats, has moved to Hue.
- 37. We started to write to each other three years ago.**  
 A. We used to write to each other for three years.  
 B. We have written to each other for three years.  
 C. We have written to each other since three years.  
 D. We used to write to each other in three years.
- 38. It took him two hours to do his homework.**  
 A. He did his homework two hours ago.              B. He finished his homework two hours ago.  
 C. He did his homework in two hours.              D. He spent two hours doing his homework.
- 39. The exam lasted three hours.**  
 A. We finished the exam at three o'clock.          B. It was a three-hours exam.  
 C. It was a three-hour exam.                          D. It takes us three hours to take the exam.
- 40. If it hadn't been so late, I would have called you.**

- A. It was not late when I called you.                      B. It was late, so I did not call you.  
C. It was late, but I called you.                         D. It was not late but I did not call you.

**41. No one but the seven-year-old boy saw the accident.**

- A. Only the seven-year-old boy saw the accident.  
B. No one at all saw the seven-year-old boy's accident.  
C. The seven-year-old boy saw no one in the accident.  
D. No one in the accident saw the seven-year-old boy.

**42. They are watering the flowers.**

- A. The flowers are being watered by them.            B. They need some water and flowers.  
C. There are some water on the flowers.             D. They are putting the flowers in water.

**43. Unlike her friends, Jane prefers an independent life.**

- A. Jane doesn't like her friends because she prefers an independent life.  
B. Her friends live in an independent life and Jane doesn't like it.  
C. Jane doesn't like her friends to live in a dependent life.  
D. Jane prefers an independent life but her friends do not.

**44. My sister speaks little German.**

- A. My sister can speak German rather well.        B. My sister doesn't speak much German.  
C. My sister speaks German softly.                   D. My sister speaks German badly.

**45. Her father fell ill because he had worked so hard.**

- A. Her father was too ill to work hard.  
B. Her father was ill and he could not work hard.  
C. Her father didn't work hard because he fell ill.  
D. Her father fell ill because of working so hard.

**46. After he gets up, he enjoys having a bath.**

- A. He likes having a bath after he gets up.            B. He likes having a bath before he gets up.  
C. He likes having a bath while he gets up.           D. He likes having a bath during he gets up.

**47. He couldn't afford the flat.**

- A. He didn't have enough money for the flat.        B. He had never afforded for the flat.  
C. He couldn't stay in the flat.                         D. He wouldn't buy the flat.

**48. This flat is too small for my family.**

- A. This flat is not enough big for my family.        B. This flat is not big enough for my family.  
C. This flat is not very big for my family.            D. This flat is not rather big for my family.

**49. They didn't meet again until the war was over.**

- A. Because the war was over, they couldn't meet again.  
B. They met again when the war happened.  
C. They met again after the war had stopped.  
D. They couldn't meet again although the war finished.

**50. I'm looking for a job as a secretary.**

- A. I'm looking for someone who works as a secretary.  
B. I'm trying to find a job as a secretary.  
C. A secretary is looking for a job as my job.  
D. I was offered a job as a secretary.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 30:**  
**VIẾT LẠI CÂU VỚI CÁC TỪ CHO SẴN**

**BT. Viết lại các câu sau bằng những từ cho sẵn dưới đây**

**1. My grandpa/ recover/ quickly/ his serious illness/.**

- A. My grandpa was recovered very quickly from his serious illness.
- B. My grandpa has recovered quite quickly from his serious illness.
- C. My grandpa will recover quite quickly after his serious illness.
- D. My grandpa recovered more quickly over his serious illness.

**2. hilltop/ have/ good/ view/ our village/.**

- A. The hilltop can make our village views better.
- B. From the hilltop, our village can viewed very well.
- C. From the hilltop, we can have a better view of our village.
- D. From the hilltop, our village can have a better view.

**3. museum/ small/ have/ a lot of/ unique artifacts/.**

- A. This museum is small, but it has a lot of unique artifacts.
- B. This museum is small because it has a lot of unique artifacts.
- C. That museum is both small and has a lot of unique artifacts.
- D. Being small, this museum has a lot of unique artifacts.

**4. disappointed/ film/ entertaining/ expected/.**

- A. We were disappointed as the film was more entertaining than we expected.
- B. We felt disappointed as the film was less entertaining than we had expected.
- C. We felt disappointed just because the film was entertaining as we expected.
- D. We were disappointed, so the film was more entertaining than we had expected.

**5. These/ baskets/ make/ thin/ bamboo/ strips/.**

- A. These baskets were made in thin bamboo strips.
- B. These baskets are made with thin bamboo strips.
- C. These baskets are made of thin bamboo strips.
- D. These baskets were made by thin bamboo strips.

**6. Phong/ walk/ fast/ it/ really/ hard/ keep up with/ him/.**

- A. Phong walks fast, and it's really hard to keep up with him.
- B. Phong walks fast, so it was really hard for keeping up with him.
- C. Phong walks fast, so it was really hard to keep up with him.
- D. Phong walks fast, and it's really hard for keep up with him.

**7. In/ past/ most/ girls/ like/ knit/ sweaters/ themselves/.**

- A. In the past most girls like to knit sweaters for themselves.
- B. In the past most girls liked knitting sweaters for themselves.
- C. In the past most girls liked to knitting sweaters for themselves.
- D. In the past most girls like knitting sweaters for themselves.

**8. Last weekend/ I/ go/ Van Phuc village/ buy/ nice/ silk scarf/ mother/.**

- A. Last week I went to Van Phuc village to buy nice silk scarf for my mother.
- B. Last week I went to Van Phuc village to buy nice silk scarf to my mother.
- C. Last week I went to Van Phuc village and buy a nice silk scarf to my mother.

D. Last week I went to Van Phuc village and bought a nice silk scarf for my mother.

**9. I/ look forward/ make/ own conical hat/ Tay Ho village/ Hue/.**

A. I look forward to making my own conical hat in Tay Ho village in Hue.

B. I look forward to make my own conical hat in Tay Ho village in Hue.

C. I look forward making my own conical hat in Tay Ho village in Hue.

D. I am looking forward to make my own conical hat in Tay Ho village in Hue.

**10. He/ say/ he/ be/ artisan/ workshop/ since 2010/.**

A. He said he was an artisan of the workshop since 2010.

B. He said was an artisan at the workshop since 2010.

C. He said he had been an artisan of the workshop since 2010.

D. He said he has been an artisan at the workshop since 2010.

**11. They/ live/ Moscow/ before/ they/ move/ London/.**

A. They had lived in Moscow before they moved to London.

B. They lived in Moscow before they had moved to London.

C. They was living in Moscow before they moved to London.

D. They had lived in Moscow before they had moved to London.

**12. No-one/ kind-hearted/ than/ my mom/.**

A. No-one is more kind-hearted than my mom.

B. No-one isn't as kind-hearted than my mom.

C. No-one is as kind-hearted than my mom.

D. No-one isn't more kind-hearte than my mum.

**13. number/ Vietnamese student/ study/ overseas/ increase/ considerable/.**

A. The number of Vietnamese students studying overseas has increased considerably.

B. Number of Vietnamese students to study overseas has increased considerably.

C. The number of Vietnamese students study overseas has increased considerable.

D. The number of Vietnamese students studying overseas have increased considerable.

**14. read/ newspaper/ morning/ give/ he/ please/.**

A. Read newspapers in the morning gives he please.

B. Reading newspapers in the morning gives him pleasure.

C. Reading newspapers on the morning will give him pleased.

D. To read newspapers in the morning give him please

**15. fortunate/,/ biogas/ not/ total/ harmful/ people/.**

A. Fortunately, biogas is not total harmful for people.

B. Fortunately, biogas is not totally harmful to people.

C. Fortunately, biogas is not totally harmful with people.

D. Fortunate, biogas is not totally harmful of people.

**16. we/ should/ think/ positive/ how/ protect/ environment/.**

A. We should think positively how to protecting our environment.

B. We should think positive how protecting our environment.

C. We should think positively how to protect our environment.

D. We should think positive how to protect our environment.

**17. Nobody/ can/ deny/ that/ she/ talent/ arts/.**

A. Nobody can deny that she talented of arts.

B. Nobody can deny that she's talented with arts.

C. Nobody can deny that she's talented at arts.

D. Nobody can deny that she's talent at arts.

**18. I/ not/ know/ what/ do/ make/ mother/ happy/.**

- A. I not know what do to make mother happy
- B. I don't know what to doing make my mother happy.
- C. I don't know what to do to make my mother happy.
- D. I don't know what doing to make my mother happy.

**19. engine/ car/ need/ clean/ once/ month/.**

- A. The engine for the car need to clean once a month.
- B. The engine of the car needs cleaning once a month.
- C. The engine with the car needs to be cleaned once a month.
- D. The engine of the car needs to clean once a month.

**20. many/ place/ the world/,/ people/ used/ dye/ cloth/ nature/ material/.**

- A. In many places in the world, people used dyeing cloth by natural materials.
- B. In many places in the world, people used to dye cloth with natural materials.
- C. In many places in the world, people used to dyeing cloth by natural materials.
- D. In many places in the world, people used to dye cloth with nature materials.

**21. book / I / just / read / interesting/.**

- A. The book whom I have just read is interesting.
- B. The book who I have just read is interesting.
- C. The book which I had just read is interesting.
- D. The book which I have just read is interesting.

**22. Although / he /tired / he / have to / finish / homework/.**

- A. Although he is tired, he have to finish the homework.
- B. Although he is tired, he has to finish his homework.
- C. Although he tired, he has to finish the homework.
- D. Although he was tired, he has to finish his homework.

**23. Children / should have / special day / express / feeling / memories / /love/their parents/.**

- A. Children should have a special day expressing their feeling, memories and love to their parents.
- B. Children should have a special day express their feeling, memories and love for their parents.
- C. Children should have a special day to express their feeling, memories and love for their parents.
- D. Children should have a special day expressing their feeling, memories and love for their parents.

**24. It/ be / necessary / have a day / celebrate / our parents/.**

- A. It is necessary to have a day for celebrate for our parents.
- B. It is necessary to have a day to celebrate for our parents.
- C. It is necessity to have a day to celebrate for our parents.
- D. It is necessary to have a day to celebrate to our parents.

**25. It/ be claimed/ The Cham towers/ Binh Dinh province/ biggest/ Southeast Asia/.**

- A. It is claimed that The Cham towers in Binh Dinh province is the biggest in Southeast Asia.
- B. It is claims that The Cham towers in Binh Dinh province is the biggest in Southeast Asia.
- C. It is claimed that The Cham towers in Binh Dinh province be the biggest in Southeast Asia.
- D. It is claimed that The Cham towers in Binh Dinh province to be the biggest in Southeast Asia.

**26. The local government/ suggest/ build a road/ through Nam Cat Tien Park/.**

- A. The local government suggested building a road through Nam Cat Tien Park.
- B. The local government suggest building a road through Nam Cat Tien Park.
- C. The local government suggested build a road through Nam Cat Tien Park.
- D. The local government suggested to build a road through Nam Cat Tien Park.

**27. Her mother/ suggest/ Mary/ go/ see the dentist/.**

- A. Her mother suggested Mary going to see the dentist.
- B. Her mother suggests that Mary goes to see the dentist.
- C. Her mother suggested that Mary should go to see the dentist.
- D. Her mother suggested that Mary went to see the dentist.

**28. It/ be said/ Ha Long Bay/ one/ the most interesting/ tourist attractions/ Vietnam/.**

- A. It said that Ha Long Bay is one of the most interesting tourist attractions in Vietnam.
- B. It is said that Ha Long Bay is one of the most interesting tourist attractions in Vietnam.
- C. It is say that Ha Long Bay is one of the most interesting tourist attractions in Vietnam.
- D. It is said that Ha Long Bay to be one of the most interesting tourist attractions in Vietnam

**29. Father's Day /celebrate/ third Sunday/ June/ some countries/.**

- A. Father's day is celebrating on the third Sunday in June in some countries.
- B. Father's day is celebrated in the third Sunday in June in some countries.
- C. Father's day is celebrating in the third Sunday in June in some countries.
- D. Father's day is celebrated on the third Sunday in June in some countries.

**30. Would/ mind/ I/ ask/ question/?**

- A. Would you mind if I ask you a question?
- B. Would you mind if I will ask you a question?
- C. Would you mind if I asking you a question?
- D. Would you mind if I asked you a question?

**31. She/ have/ opportunity/ study/ Australia/last year/.**

- A. She has had an opportunity to study in Australia last year.
- B. She had an opportunity studying in Australia last year.
- C. She has an opportunity to study in Australia last year.
- D. She had an opportunity to study in Australia last year.

**32. While/ she/ clean/ the house/ her husband/ sleep.**

- A. While she cleaned the house, her husband was slepping.
- B. While she cleans the house, her husband sleeps.
- C. While she was cleaning the house, her husband slept.
- D. While she was cleaning the house, her husband was sleeping.

**33. There/ a shop/ my house/ sell/ cheap DVDs/.**

- A. There is a shop near my house which it sells cheap DVDs.
- B. There is a shop near my house where they sell cheap DVDs there.
- C. There is a shop near my house where sells cheap DVDs.
- D. There is a shop near my house which sells cheap DVDs.

**34. The English couple/ live/ next/ us/ fluent/ Vietnamese/.**

- A. The English couple who live next to us are fluent at Vietnamese.
- B. The English couple who lives next to us is fluent at Vietnamese.
- C. The English couple who lives next to us is fluent in Vietnamese.
- D. The English couple who live next to us are fluent in Vietnamese.

**35. Nga/ pick/ few words/ Thai/ when she was on holiday/ Phuket/.**

- A. Nga picked up a few words of Thai when she was on holiday in Phuket.
- B. Nga picks up few words of Thai when she was on holiday in Phuket.
- C. Nga picks up a few words of Thai when she was on holiday in Phuket.
- D. Nga picked up few words of Thai when she was on holiday in Phuket.

**36. I/ move/ new school/ English/ taught/ native teachers/.**

- A. I moved to a new school which English is taught with native teachers.

- B. I moved to a new school where English is taught with native teachers.  
 C. I moved to a new school where English is taught by native teachers.  
 D. I moved to a new school which English is taught by native teachers.
- 37. We/ be/ very/ tired/ last night/ because/ we/ play/ football/ all the afternoon/.**  
 A. We are very tired last night because we played all the afternoon.  
 B. We were very tired last night because we played all the afternoon.  
 C. We were very tired last night because we were playing all the afternoon.  
 D. We were very tired last night because we play all the afternoon.
- 38. We/ used/ wear/ uniforms/ when/ we/ be/ school/.**  
 A. We used to wear uniforms when we were in school.  
 B. We used to wear uniforms when we were at school.  
 C. We used to wearing uniforms when we were at school.  
 D. We used wear uniforms when we were at school.
- 39. The case/ be/ so heavy/ Nam/ could/ put/ on the rack/.**  
 A. The case was so heavy that Nam could not put it on the rack.  
 B. The case was so heavy that Nam could put it on the rack.  
 C. The case was such heavy that Nam could not put it on the rack.  
 D. The case was heavy that Nam could not put it on the rack.
- 40. He/ read/ book/ his room/ when/ he/ hear/ big explosion/.**  
 A. He was reading books on his room when he heard a big explosion.  
 B. He read books in his room when he heard a big explosion.  
 C. He was reading books in his room when he was hearing a big explosion.  
 D. He was reading books in his room when he heard a big explosion.
- 41. He/ read/ this novel/ 9 o'clock.**  
 A. He reads this novel at 9 o'clock.  
 B. He reads this novel on 9 o'clock.  
 C. He has read this novel for 9 o'clock.  
 D. He has read this novel since 9 o'clock.
- 42. They/ be/ very happy/ see/ you again/.**  
 A. They are very happy see you again.  
 B. They are very happy to see you again.  
 C. They were very happy seeing you again.  
 D. They were very happy when seeing you again.
- 43. You/ can/ give up/ smoke/ if/ you/ not want/ die/.**  
 A. You can give up smoking if you don't want to die.  
 B. You can give up smoke if you don't want to die.  
 C. You can give up to smoke if you don't want to die.  
 D. You can give up smoking if you didn't want to die.
- 44. We/ wish/ go/ to the cinema/ last night/.**  
 A. We wish we go to the cinema last night.  
 B. We wish we went to the cinema last night.  
 C. We wish we had gone to the cinema last night.  
 D. We wish we will go to the cinema last night.
- 45. I/ not seen/ Jane/ since/ we/ leave/ high school.**  
 A. I haven't seen Jane since we leave high school.  
 B. I haven't seen Jane since we left high school.  
 C. I didn't see Jane since we left high school.

D. I didn't see Jane since we have left high school.

**46. The novels / I / just / read / interesting.**

A. The novels who I have just read are interesting

B. The novels whom I have just read is interesting

C. The novels which I had just read is interesting

D. The novels which I have just read are interesting.

**47. It/ expect/ the man/ not come/ back again/ tomorrow/.**

A. It is expected that the man won't come back again tomorrow.

B. It was expected that the man don't come back again tomorrow.

C. It is expected for the man not to come back again tomorrow.

D. It was expected that the man won't come back again tomorrow.

**48. Wear/ uniforms/ encourage/ students/ proud/ their school.**

A. Wear uniforms encourages students to be proud of their school.

B. Wear uniforms encourage students to be proud of their school.

C. Wearing uniforms encourages students to proud of their school.

D. Wearing uniforms encourages students to be proud of their school.

**49. I/ wish/ we/ meet/ singer/ next week/.**

A. I wish we meet that singer next week.

B. I wish we met that singer next week.

C. I wish we will meet that singer next week.

D. I wish we would meet that singer next week.

**50. It/ believe/ Tom/ pass/ driving test/.**

A. It is believe that Tom will pass the driving test.

B. It is believed that Tom will pass the driving test.

C. It is believed for Tom to pass the driving test.

D. It was believed that Tom pass the driving test.

# PHẦN

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: NGỮ ÂM (PHONETICS)

### A. PHÁT ÂM

#### BT 1:

1A	5A	9A	13D	17B
2D	6D	10B	14A	18B
3B	7B	11D	15B	19D
4B	8C	12C	16C	20D

#### BT2:

1C	5C	9C	13A	17C
2D	6C	10D	14A	18D
3D	7A	11B	15D	19B
4D	8C	12B	16D	20C

#### BT 3:

1B	9B	17C	25A	33C
2A	10A	18D	26B	34C
3C	11C	19C	27C	35D
4C	12B	20D	28B	36A
5A	13B	21C	29D	37C
6D	14D	22D	30A	38D
7A	15C	23C	31A	39C
8A	16A	24D	32C	40D

### B. TRỌNG ÂM

#### BT 1:

1A	5B	9A	13D	17C
2C	6D	10B	14B	18B
3A	7D	11C	15C	19A
4C	8A	12C	16C	20D

#### BT 2:

1D	7D	13D	19A	25A
2A	8C	14C	20B	26D
3C	9A	15C	21B	27D
4B	10D	16A	22D	28A
5A	11B	17B	23B	29D
6B	12C	18B	24B	30C

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: THÌ (TENSES)

**BT 1:**

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. do – do                 | 6. is – plays            |
| 2. am doing – is listening | 7. teaches               |
| 3. are going               | 8. read – listen – watch |
| 4. have                    | 9. are running           |
| 5. likes – doesn't like    | 10. am listening         |

**BT 2:**

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. didn't see            | 6. wrote                  |
| 2. have written          | 7. has taught – graduated |
| 3. have – seen           | 8. hasn't smoked          |
| 4. has lost – has looked | 9. have – been            |
| 5. have read             | 10. won                   |

**BT 3:**

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. arrived – had gone      | 9. caught                               |
| 2. were doing – were lying | 10. was watching                        |
| 3. had eaten – arrived     | 11. was opening – heard – put – crawled |
| 4. was playing – was doing | 12. dropped – was doing – didn't break  |
| 5. gone – had finished     | 13. were dancing                        |
| 6. was having              | 14. was oping – blew                    |
| 7. had done – saw          | 15. was riding                          |
| 8. got – had left          |   |

**BT 4:**

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. go – sits                            | 6. come – will work |
| 2. will explain                         | 7. will be working  |
| 3. will wait – get                      | 8. see              |
| 4. will – be doing – will be practicing | 9. will do – come   |
| 5. will remind                          | 10. see             |

**BT 5:**

- |    |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1D | 9C  | 17C | 25A | 33A |
| 2A | 10C | 18B | 26D | 34C |
| 3A | 11A | 19D | 27A | 35C |
| 4C | 12C | 20B | 28B | 36A |
| 5A | 13C | 21C | 29D | 37A |
| 6B | 14B | 22C | 30A | 38B |
| 7C | 15D | 23D | 31B | 39C |
| 8D | 16D | 24A | 32C | 40D |

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: CÂU PHỨC  
(COMPOUND SENTENCES)**

**BT 1:**

1C	4C	7A	10A	13B
2A	5A	8C	11C	14C
3B	6B	9C	12A	15A

**BT 2:**

1. when	3. since	5. before	7. as though	9. while
2. in case	4. unless	6. as long as	8. because	10. although

**BT 3:**

1. although	4. because	7. by	10. in case	13. unless
2. unless	5. although	8. if	11. although	14. when
3. although	6. if	9. unless	12. even if	15. if

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ  
(PHRASAL VERBS)**

**BT 1:**

1. down	9. of	17. for	25. off	33. look
2. with	10. on	18. on	26. off	34. break
3. on	11. up	19. into	27. down	35. drop
4. off	12. out	20. up	28. together	36. saving
5. up	13. on	21. in	29. put	37. put
6. up	14. by	22. up	30. got	38. paying
7. up	15. up	23. over	31. tells	39. got
8. out	16. after	24. up	32. turned	40. passed

**BT 2:**

1. look	3. catch	5. give	7. turned	9. face
2. get	4. get	6. deal	8. cut	10. look

**BT 3:**

1. bring out	3. cut ...down on	5. put up with	7. taken up	9. came down with
2. count on	4. turned down	6. telling off	8. dealing with	10. hold on

**BT 4:**

1. up to	3. up for	5. away from	7. up with	9. go for
2. in for	4. down with	6. up for	8. on with	10. rid of

**BT 5:**

1. off	3. over	5. away	7. off	9. for
2. after	4. into	6. out	8. up	10. out

**BT 6:**

1. see off	3. told off	5. pulled out	7. watch out	9. saved up
2. agree with	4. paid back	6. believe in	8. makes up	10. get down

**BT 7:**

- |                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. B (worked out)      | 6. B (clear up the room)       |
| 2. A (keep up with)    | 7. C (ran into my old teacher) |
| 3. C (getting rid of)  | 8. D (off her jewelry)         |
| 4. B (look through)    | 9. B (agreed on)               |
| 5. B (broke them down) | 10. D (carried out)            |

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: SO SÁNH  
(COMPARISONS)**

**BT 1:**

- |                     |                   |                        |
|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. as easy          | 11. faster        | 21. most intelligent   |
| 2. as fat           | 12. more populous | 22. the most polluted  |
| 3. as/ so difficult | 13. more densely  | 23. the most stunning  |
| 4. as fun           | 14. more reliable | 24. the tallest        |
| 5. as popular       | 15. better        | 25. the most enjoyable |
| 6. as/ so hot       | 16. farther       | 26. the worst          |
| 7. as difficult     | 17. happier       | 27. the largest        |
| 8. as developed     | 18. healthier     | 28. the richest        |
| 9. as delicious     | 19. slower        | 29. the most boring    |
| 10. as/ so talented | 20. worse         | 30. the happiness      |

**BT 2:**

- |    |    |     |     |     |
|----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1B | 5C | 9B  | 13D | 17C |
| 2D | 6B | 10C | 14B | 18D |
| 3B | 7C | 11A | 15C | 19B |
| 4A | 8C | 12D | 16A | 20D |

**BT 3:**

- Peter is the tallest person in my class.
- No mountain in the world is higher than Mount Everest.
- She is the prettiest girl I have ever met.
- That computer works worse than this one.  
That computer doesn't work as/ so well as this one.
- The red car is more expensive than the black car.  
The red car isn't as/ so cheap as the black car.
- The more he works, the more tired he feels.
- The bigger the apartment is, the higher the rent is.
- The sooner we set off, the sooner we will arrive.
- The better the joke is, the louder the laughter is.
- The fatter she gets, the more tired she feels.

**BT 4:**

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A (more)       | 6. C (windier)     |
| 2. B (the worst)  | 7. B (more often)  |
| 3. A. (the more)  | 8. C (better)      |
| 4. C. (correctly) | 9. D (is)          |
| 5. C (loudly)     | 10. A (the richer) |

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: CÂU GIÁN TIẾP  
(REPORTED SPEECH)**
**BT 1:**

1. Nam said that he had just received a postcard from his foreign friend.
2. Thu said that all the students would have a meeting the following week.
3. I told my teacher that I had forgot to do my homework.
4. Peter said that if he passed that test, his father would buy him a new skateboard.
5. Her father said to her that she could go to the movie with her firend.
6. Phong said that he was looking forward to his grandfather's gift.
7. Minh said to me they would start collecting the data the next month.
8. She asked her mom if there were any oranges in the fridge.
9. She asked Ba if he was reading that book at 8 o'clock the Sunday before.
10. He asked his friend if it would rain the next morning.
11. She asked Nam if his sister and brother went to the same school.
12. He asked Nam if he had finished his task.
13. The boy asked me if I could lend him 10 pounds.
14. I asked John why he wasn't looking for a job.
15. His friend asked him how he went to the airport.
16. I asked him whose car he had borrowed the night before.
17. The teacher asked me where my father worked.
18. Tam's friend aksed him how long he would stay in England.
19. My doctor asked me what I had done to cope with my work stress.
20. He asked me how many lesson I was going to learn the next month.

**BT 2:**

1C	5D	9D	13D	17C
2C	6B	10B	14B	18B
3D	7C	11A	15C	19B
4C	8D	12A	16B	20D

**BT 3:**

1. The receptionist asked the guest to fill in the form.
2. She told us to take off our shoes.
3. She told him to my his own business.
4. She told him to give her another glass of wine.
5. She asked me to bring her a book.
6. My mother told him to open the window.
7. The captain aksed them to wait there until he came back.
8. She invited us to do come and enjoy tea with her family.
9. She told him not to touch it.

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 10.<br>again.                | He told me not to do that      |
| 11.<br>like that.            | He told her not to talk to him |
| 12.<br>the computer himself. | She warned him not to repair   |
| 13.                          | She told me not to let him in. |
| 14.<br>without him.          | He begged her not to go out    |
| 15.<br>bag.                  | She told me not to forget her  |

**BT4:**

- |                 |               |                |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. to keep      | 6. not doing  | 11. disclosing |
| 2. to stop      | 7. wearing    | 12. to kill    |
| 3. to give      | 8. to help    | 13. breaking   |
| 4. not to smoke | 9. to abandon | 14. to touch   |
| 5. to plant     | 10. to give   | 15. having     |

**BT5:**

- |    |    |    |     |     |
|----|----|----|-----|-----|
| 1C | 4D | 7A | 10A | 13C |
| 2A | 5D | 8B | 11D | 14C |
| 3D | 6C | 9C | 12B | 15B |

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: PHÂN BIỆT  
USED TO VÀ BE/GET USED TO**

**BT1:**

- |                         |                       |                            |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. did Jim use to do    | 6. used to be         | 11. did you use to confide |
| 2. did Mary use to be   | 7. used to set off    | 12. didn't use to use      |
| 3. didn't use to travel | 8. didn't use to cope | 13. didn't use to like     |
| 4. did people use to do | 9. used to raise      | 14. used to work           |
| 5. used to have         | 10. used to be        | 15. used to suffer         |

**BT2:**

1. Men used to be the breadwinner of the family and women used to depend greatly on men.
2. Who used to take care of you when you were a toddler?
3. Jim didn't use to interested in reading book when he was small.
4. My brother used to have his hair cut short when he joined the army.
5. Dennis used to give up smoking 2 years ago.
6. My parents used to live in the USA when they were young.
7. Jim used to be my best friend.
8. When he was younger, my uncle used to be a national swimming champion.
9. I used to disike eating ice cream when I was a child.
10. When Barbara was Italy, she used to stay with an Italian family.

**BT3.**

- |            |                  |              |                |
|------------|------------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. work    | 6. living        | 11. eating   | 16. studying   |
| 2. working | 7. be - sittiing | 12. eat      | 17. dance      |
| 3. leaving | 8. having        | 13. swim     | 18. sleeping   |
| 4. get up  | 9. wear          | 14. like     | 19. stop       |
| 5. living  | 10. wearing      | 15. speaking | 20. did – work |

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: CÂU ƯỚC**  
**(WISHES)**

**BT1:**

- |               |                |                     |                    |
|---------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. were       | 6. had come    | 11. would visit     | 16. hurried        |
| 2. felt       | 7. would come  | 12. found           | 17. showed         |
| 3. finished   | 8. had given   | 13. would telephone | 18. didn't forget  |
| 4. would come | 9. didn't lose | 14. would have      | 19. hadn't snowed  |
| 5. had opened | 10. had known  | 15. would come      | 20. wouldn't leave |

**BT2:**

- |    |    |     |     |     |
|----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1B | 5B | 9C  | 13C | 17B |
| 2C | 6B | 10B | 14D | 18B |
| 3C | 7B | 11A | 15B | 19D |
| 4B | 8A | 12A | 16D | 20A |

**BT3:**

- ....I didn't have to learn English hard.
- ....they hadn't had a lot of homework last Sunday.
- ....she were a famous singer.
- ....he liked playing sports.
- ....it hadn't been so hot last Sunday.
- ....Minh took part in playing tennis with us.
- ....he could leave in Da Nang with us.
- ....I had bought a new phone last evening.
- ....they had gone to the cinema yesterday.
- ....he could go to the shopping.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG  
(PASSIVE VOICES)**

**BT1:**

1. Letters are typed in the office by Mary.
2. You will be helped by his father tomorrow.
3. This bottle was broken by Peter.
4. English is being learnt in the room.
5. I had not been told about it.
6. All the workers of the plan were been instructed by the chief engineer.
7. Some of my books have been taken away.
8. The victims have been provided with food and clothing.
9. English is spoken in almost every corner of the world.
10. This machine must not be used after 5:30 pm.
11. Would she be invited to your wedding party?
12. Were some exercises given by the teacher?
13. Were big cakes being made for the party?
14. Must the test be finished before ten?
15. Has your homework been finished?
16. Where is English spoken?
17. Who is being kept in the kitchen?
18. What time will this English test be finished by Tom?
19. How can this safe be opened?
20. How was the lost man be found by the police?

**BT2:**

1. It is believed that 13 is an unlucky number.  
13 is believed to be an unlucky number.
2. It is said that John is the brightest student in class.  
John is said to be the brightest student in class.
3. It was known that they had told him of the meeting.  
They were known to have told him of the meeting.
4. It was declared that she won the competition.  
She was declared to win the competition.
5. It was rumored that the man was still living.  
The man was rumored to be living.
6. It was reported that the troops were coming.

The troops were reported to be coming.

7. It was rumored that there was a ghost in that house.

There was rumored to be a ghost in that house.

8. It was claimed that everything they said was true.

Everything they said was claimed to be true.

9. It isn't thought that this camera costs that much.

This camera isn't thought to cost that much.

10. It wasn't expected that the building collapsed after the storm.

The building wasn't expected to collapse after the storm.

**BT3:**

1. They have the story told again by her.

2. John got his shirt cleaned by his sister.

3. Anne had had her composition typed by a friend.

4. Rick will have his hair cut by a barber.

5. I will get a new dress made by the dressmaker.

6. He had his car repaired by mechanic.

7. She often gets the heater maintained by the technician.

8. They had the shoplifter arrested by the police.

9. Are you going to have your shoes repaired by the shoemaker.

10. I must have my teeth checked by the dentist.

**BT4:**

1C                      5B                      9D                      13B                      17A

2B                      6C                      10D                      14A                      18C

3B                      7D                      11C                      15C                      19C

4B                      8C                      12A                      16B                      20B

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: CÁCH SỬ DỤNG CỦA SUGGEST**  
**(USAGES OF SUGGEST)**

**BT1:**

- |            |       |            |              |                      |
|------------|-------|------------|--------------|----------------------|
| 1. take    | 3. do | 5. holding | 7. should be | 9. go                |
| 2. playing | 4. do | 6. change  | 8. take care | 10. shouldn't choose |

**BT2:**

- |                                    |                       |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. (should) keep                   | 6. (should) learn     |
| 2. shouldn't spend / doesn't spend | 7. (should) try       |
| 3. not taking                      | 8. throwing           |
| 4. (should) buy                    | 9. paying             |
| 5. (should) use                    | 10. playing - singing |

**BT3:**

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. going           | 6. (should) carry |
| 2. visiting        | 7. holding        |
| 3. (should) get    | 8. should pay     |
| 4. (should) buy    | 9. playing        |
| 5. (should) travel | 10. rewrite       |

**BT 4:**

1. The teacher suggested that Peter should learn English.
2. My sister suggested you (should) take a rest from work.
3. Tom suggested going to the sea this weekend.
4. Jane suggested that Jim should never play truant again.
5. My mom suggested going out and enjoying the weather.
6. My friend suggested that you should go to Hoan Kiem lake if I visited Ha Noi.
7. Jane's mother suggested that she (should) finished her homework before going out.
8. Peter suggested working out the solution together.
9. My neighbor suggested having dinner together.
10. My father suggested that I (should) take any opportunities that I had.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: CẤU TRÚC TÍNH TỪ**  
**(STRUCTURES OF ADJECTIVE)**

**BT1:**

1. It is hard for Jim to do this task.
2. It is not easy to me to pass the test.
3. It is challenging for you to change your job now.
4. Mary is always afraid to try anything new.
5. Are you confident to win the competition?
6. My mother is pleased to see me at home now.
7. I am sorry to hear that you had an accident last week.
8. I am glad that you come to my party.
9. It is now surprising that Peter is the best student in his class.
10. I'm convinced that Peter is right.

**BT 2:**

- |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A ( am sure)   | 6. C (is)             |
| 2. B (to present) | 7. A (was astonished) |
| 3. D (climbs)     | 8. C (to pass)        |
| 4. C (to win)     | 9. B (omit "be")      |
| 5. B (to hear)    | 10. A (aren't aware)  |

**BT3:**

1. ... not difficult for me to learn English.
2. ... say that he was the best.
3. ... receive a letter from his foreign friend yesterday.
4. ... that I cannot come to your party this weekend.
5. ... as easy to do gardening as it looks.
6. ... difficult for me to make the last decision.
7. ... he has won a lottery.
8. ... run into a famous singer.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: TỪ CHỈ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG  
(QUANTIFIERS)**

**BT 1:**

1. any	4. a	7. any	10. a	13. some
2. any	5. a	8. a	11. any	14. any - some
3. some	6. a	9. a	12. any	15. any

**BT 2:**

1. much	6. another	11. were	16. too much
2. a little	7. a little	12. each	17. most of
3. fewer	8. the other	13. none	18. every
4. any – some	9. much	14. any	19. many
5. a great deal of	10. a great deal of	15. plenty of	20. a little

**BT 3:**

1D	4D	7A	10B	13B
2B	5B	8C	11D	14D
3A	6B	9D	12D	15C

**BT 4:**

1. slice	3. kilos	5. bowl	7. cloves	9. heads
2. glass	4. pitchers	6. carton	8. handful	10. pinch

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN  
(CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)**

**BT 1:**

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. expose – burns | 6. multiply – get |
| 2. heat – turns   | 7. calls – am not |
| 3. gets – expands | 8. go - mail      |
| 4. stand – get    | 9. is – drinks    |
| 5. rings - open   | 10. freezes - is  |

**BT 2:**

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. study – will pass  | 6. travel – will visit |
| 2. shines – will walk | 7. wear – will slip    |
| 3. has – will see     | 8. forgets – will give |
| 4. come – will be     | 9. go – will listen    |
| 5. earns – will fly   | 10. wait – will ask    |

**BT 3:**

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. played        | 6. knew          |
| 2. would ... be  | 7. gave          |
| 3. didn't belong | 8. stopped       |
| 4. won           | 9. wouldn't come |
| 5. would ... do  | 10. saw          |

**BT 4:**

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. would have visited      | 6. would have offered  |
| 2. had been                | 7. wouldn't have stung |
| 3. hadn't seen             | 8. had realized        |
| 4. would ... have accepted | 9. would have stopped  |
| 5. wouldn't have been      | 10. would have reached |

**BT 5:**

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. would get     | 6. would stay      |
| 2. had supported | 7. hadn't known    |
| 3. had had       | 8. wouldn't be     |
| 4. had been      | 9. hadn't been     |
| 5. would taste   | 10. hadn't stopped |

**BT 6:**

- |    |    |     |     |     |
|----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1B | 5D | 9A  | 13C | 17B |
| 2A | 6A | 10B | 14A | 18B |
| 3D | 7B | 11A | 15D | 19A |
| 4B | 8C | 12B | 16B | 20A |

**BT 7:**

1. If he didn't have to study for his exam, he could go out.
2. If I hadn't felt tired, I could have played football this afternoon.
3. If she had a college degree, she could be employed.
4. If the weather hadn't been terrible, we wouldn't have put off our trip.
5. If she weren't lazy, she could pass the exam.
6. If he didn't smoke too much, he could get rid of his cough.
7. If she hadn't walked to the meeting, she wouldn't have been late.

8. If I hadn't eaten lunch, I wouldn't feel hungry now.
9. If you tell lies to your boss, you'll be fired at once.  
If you don't tell lies to your boss, you won't be fired at once.
10. If you are impatient, you will make mistakes.
11. If you study hard, you will pass the exam.  
If you don't study hard, you won't pass the exam.
12. If you tell me the whole the truth, I will help you.  
If you don't tell me the whole the truth, I won't help you.
13. If you don't promise to return back, I won't lend you.
14. Unless you like this one, I'll bring you another.
15. Unless they invite me, I won't come.

**BT 8:**

1. Should you need more money, take an extra 200.
2. Were I your father, I would insist you practice harder.
3. Should my girlfriend call, please let me know right away.
4. Had I thought of the right words, I would have told them what I was thinking!
5. Were I a rich kid, I wouldn't have to worry about anything.
6. Should they run out of the tickets, we will have to go to another theatre.
7. Should you change your mind, let us know.
8. Had you known my mom, you would have thought she was crazy too.
9. Had you heard your singing, you would have laughed too.
10. Were I a celebrity, I could buy any bag I want.
11. Were you to change your mind, I would be most grateful.
12. Should she decide to come, please telephone.
13. Had he understood the problem, he wouldn't have committed those mistakes.
14. Had I known about those problems, I would never have moved here.
15. Had he not resigned, we would have been obliged to give him the sack.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: MẠO TỪ  
(ARTICLES)**

**BT 1:**

1A	4C	7A	10A	13D
2B	5B	8C	11C	14C
3A	6A	9A	12B	15D

**BT 2:**

1. Ø - Ø	9. the	17. Ø	25. the – the	33. an
2. Ø	10. the	18. Ø - Ø	26. the	34. the
3. Ø - Ø	11. Ø	19. the	27. Ø	35. the
4. the	12. the - Ø	20. a	28. a	36. the – the
5. a - Ø - Ø - Ø	13. a	21. a – the – the	29. a	37. Ø – the
6. the - the	14. an – the	22. the – a	30. a – the	38. a - the
7. Ø	15. the	23. the – the	31. the – the	39. the
8. a	16. Ø	24. Ø - the	32. the - the	40. the - the

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 15: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ  
(RELATIVE CLAUSES)**

**BT 1:**

1. who/ that	10. whose	19. where
2. who/ that	11. whose	20. which
3. which/ that	12. which/ that	21. who/ that
4. who/ that	13. who/ that	22. whose
5. which/ that	14. who/ that	23. which
6. who/ whom/ that	15. which	24. which
7. who/ whom/ that	16. who/ that	25. which
8. which/ that	17. whom	
9. whose	18. which/ that	

**BT 2:**

1B	6B	11B	16A	21B
2A	7C	12D	17B	22D
3C	8A	13B	18D	23C
4B	9C	14D	19A	24B
5A	10C	15B	20C	25B

**BT 3:**

1. The man who/ whom/ that you met last week is her father.
2. Zoe likes the blue T-shirt which/ that my sister is wearing.
3. Show me the new hats which/ that you bought last night.
4. That is a company which/ that produces rings.
5. The children were attracted by the show which/ that was performed so many.
6. My best friend can compose songs which/ that Ly sings very well.
7. Tet, which often happens in late January or early February, is a festival.
8. Zoe bought a new phone yesterday which/ that I can use to send and receive messages.
9. Jack is the boy who/ that is giving my mom a gift.
10. We employed the lawyer who/ whom/ that Julie recommended.

11. Zoe has a sister whose name is Juma.
12. The fruit which/ that I bought is on the table.
13. The wallet which/ that Lucy found in the garden belongs to John.
14. The food which/ that David cooked was delicious.
15. The car which/ that my father gave me was stolen.

**BT 4:**

1. She is a woman about whom I told you.
2. I'll give you an address to which you should write.
3. The picture at which she was looking is beautiful.
4. The movie about which they are talking is fantastic.
5. The song to which we listened last night was interesting.

**BT 5.**

1. The man standing there is a clown.
2. The envelop lying on the table has no stamp on it.
3. My grandmother, old and sick, never goes out of the house.
4. The student don't know how to do exercise given by the teacher yesterday.
5. The diagrams made by young Faraday were sent to Sir Humphry Davy at the end of 1812.
6. You are the last person to see her alive.
7. The pilot was the only one to survive the air crash.
8. All students not handing in their papers will fail in the exam.
9. I saw many houses destroyed by the storm.
10. He was the second man to be killed in this way.
11. Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon.
12. The system used here is very successful.
13. John, teaching my son, is my neighbor.
14. He simply loves parties. He is always the first to come and the last to go.
15. The Queen Elizabeth is the largest ship to have been built on the Clyde.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 16: CÁCH SỬ DỤNG CỦA DESPITE VÀ  
ALTHOUGH**

**BT 1:**

- |                          |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. although              | 6. although              | 11. despite / in spite of |
| 2. despite / in spite of | 7. although              | 12. despite / in spite of |
| 3. although              | 8. despite / in spite of | 13. despite / in spite of |
| 4. despite / in spite of | 9. despite / in spite of | 14. despite / in spite of |
| 5. despite / in spite of | 10. although             | 15. although              |

**BT 2:**

- |    |    |     |     |     |
|----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1B | 5D | 9A  | 13A | 17B |
| 2D | 6A | 10B | 14B | 18C |
| 3A | 7A | 11B | 15C | 19B |
| 4C | 8D | 12C | 16C | 20A |

**BT 3:**

1. Despite having excellent grades, she wasn't admitted to the university.
2. The firefighters rescued the dog in the house despite the danger.
3. In spite of the cold the weather, we went swimming last week.
4. In spite of the hard work, we enjoyed doing that job.
5. Despite having very little money, Jane is happy.
6. Although her foot was injured, she managed to walk to the village.
7. Even though the salary was low, I decided to accept the job.
8. Though we were the better team, we lost the match.
9. Even though I hadn't eaten for 24 hours, I didn't feel hungry.
10. Although the weather was bad, they went out for a walk.
11. Despite the fact that his health is poor, he attends office regularly.
12. Peter practises hard, but he can't pass the driving test.
13. Although he has plenty of money she is very mean.
14. In spite of his poor vision, he reads books.
15. As famous Mr John is, he's very humble.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17: DẠNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ  
(FORMS OF VERB)**

**BT 1:**

- |                 |           |                           |                          |
|-----------------|-----------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. do           | 6. to see | 11. to accept - kown      | 16. go – to visit        |
| 2. sing         | 7. repeat | 12. tell                  | 17. to be                |
| 3. to swim      | 8. use    | 13. send                  | 18. remember – look      |
| 4. to live      | 9. live   | 14. live – want – to take | 19. know – to use – show |
| 5. to go – rain | 10. play  | 15. to go – make - go     | 20. open - throw         |

**BT 2:**

- |                       |   |                |
|-----------------------|---|----------------|
| 1. talking            | 8. to have – writing                    | 15. decorating |
| 2. to speak           | 9. to explain – to listen – to grumblng | 16. to allow   |
| 3. giving             | 10. offering – to live – to work        | 17. to work    |
| 4. to start – looking | 11. going                               | 18. to inform  |
| 5. to study           | 12. to start                            | 19. to have    |
| 6. waiting            | 13. to live                             | 20. to write   |
| 7. to show – to use   | 14. playing                             |                |

**BT 3:**

- |            |             |                       |            |
|------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------|
| 1. going   | 4. to visit | 7. going              | 10. to eat |
| 2. to help | 5. to do    | 8. to inform          |            |
| 3. laying  | 6. working  | 9. starting – to work |            |

**BT 4:**

- |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1B | 6B  | 11C | 16C | 21A | 26A |
| 2A | 7A  | 12B | 17A | 22B | 27D |
| 3C | 8D  | 13C | 18A | 23C | 28B |
| 4A | 9A  | 14B | 19D | 24B | 29A |
| 5A | 10C | 15C | 20A | 25A | 30C |

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18: SỰ HOÀ HỢP GIỮA  
CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ  
(SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT)**

**BT 1:**

1. are	6. is	11. are	16. are	21. is	26. are
2. is	7. seems	12. are	17. has	22. is	27. is
3. has	8. are	13. was	18. was	23. makes	28. have
4. has	9. are	14. is	19. is	24. is	29. are
5. is	10. are	15. are	20. are	25. is	30. is

**BT 2:**

1B	6C	11A	16A	21B
2A	7A	12B	17B	22A
3A	8C	13A	18A	23B
4A	9B	14A	19A	24A
5A	10A	15D	20B	25B

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19: CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI  
(TAG QUESTIONS)**

**BT 1:**

1. didn't you	7. cannot he	13. didn't she	19. was there	25. will they
2. May I	8. aren't there	14. isn't it	20. is it	26. didn't it
3. doesn't he	9. isn't it	15. did they	21. did they	27. does she
4. are I	10. do you	16. could they	22. shall we	28. can they
5. isn't there	11. cannot he	17. don't you	23. will you	29. didn't they
6. does she	12. aren't I	18. does she	24. hasn't he	30. didn't he

**BT 2:**

1B	5A	9B	13A	17C
2A	6C	10A	14B	18D
3C	7B	11A	15A	19A
4B	8A	12A	16B	20B

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20: MỐI LIÊN QUAN GIỮA QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN VÀ  
HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH**

**BT 1:**

1. He hasn't gone abroad before.
2. I haven't had a delicious meal before.
3. This is the first time she has played this game.
4. She has driven for 1 month.
5. We have eaten since it started to rain.
6. She started teaching the children in the remote village five months ago.
7. I began living in Ho Chi Minh city when I was 8.
8. I haven't had my hair cut since I left her.
9. They haven't talked to each other for two months.
10. She last had a swim five years ago.
11. I last met Linda two weeks ago.

12. She hasn't kissed me for 5 months.
13. She hasn't seen her elder sister since 1999.
14. The last time he wrote to me was April.
15. The last time I saw him was 8 days ago.
16. We haven't met for a long time.
17. I haven't visited my grandparents for 5 years.
18. It is Monday since I last took a bath.
19. How long have you had it?
20. When did you buy that bag?

**BT 2:**

1B	5D	9A	13B	17B
2C	6B	10A	14D	18A
3C	7D	11D	15C	19A
4D	8B	12B	16B	20A

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 21: CẤU TẠO CỦA TỪ  
(WORD FORM)**

**BT 1:**

1. beauty (N), beautify (V), beautiful (ADJ), beautifully (ADV)
2. reasonable (ADJ), reason (N), reasonably (ADV)
3. industry (N), industrial (ADJ), industrialize (V), industrious (ADJ)
4. comfort (N), comfortable (ADJ), comfortably (ADV)
5. invite (V), invitation (N)
6. care (V), careful (ADJ), careless (ADJ), carefully (ADV)
7. health (N), healthy (ADJ)
8. disappointment (N), disappoint (V), disappointing (ADJ), disappointed (ADJ)
9. nation (N), national (ADJ), nationalize (V), nationality (N)
10. act (V), action (N), activity (N), active (ADJ)
11. lazy (ADJ), laziness (N), lazily (ADV)
12. education (N), educate (V), educated (ADJ), educative (ADJ), educational (ADJ)
13. success (N), succeed (V), successful (ADJ), successfully (ADV)
14. pollute (V), pollution (N), pollutant (N), polluted (ADJ)
15. decide (V), decision (N), decisive (ADJ)
16. achieve (V), achiever (N), achievement (N), achievable (ADJ)
17. destroy (V), destructive (ADJ), destructor (N), destruction (N)
18. will (V), willing (ADJ), willingness (N), willingly (ADV)
19. obey (V), obedience (N), obedient (ADJ), obediently (ADV)
20. able (ADJ), ability (N), disable (V), disability (N)

**BT2:**

1B	9C	17B	25C	33B
2C	10B	18B	26B	34B
3A	11B	19B	27B	35B
4C	12B	20B	28A	36B
5B	13C	21C	29B	37B
6A	14C	22C	30B	38D
7B	15B	23B	31A	39B
8B	16B	24B	32C	40B

<b>CHUYÊN ĐỀ 22: TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ</b> <b>(THE ORDERS OF THE ADJECTIVE)</b>
--

**BT 1:**

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. nice new black wooden                    | 11. successful old American        |
| 2. memorable long                           | 12. pretty oval white              |
| 3. training                                 | 13. beautiful large round wooden   |
| 4. small old white Korean                   | 14. nice brown Chanel leather      |
| 5. crowded narrow new                       | 15. beautiful long black           |
| 6. pretty white silk                        | 16. interesting old Vietnamese oil |
| 7. glassy big blue                          | 17. lovely old German              |
| 8. nice big old blue                        | 18. kind tall middle-aged Japanese |
| 9. magnificent spacious old                 | 19. convenient small black plastic |
| 10. comfortable small black Chinese leather | 20. new white cotton               |

**BT 2:**

1A	5C	9C	13A	17C
2C	6A	10B	14D	18D
3B	7A	11C	15B	19D
4A	8B	12D	16D	20C

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 23: LIÊN TỪ  
(CONJUNCTIONS)**

**BT1:**

1. My father has such a good health that he seldom takes any medicines.
2. It is such strong coffee that I can't drink it.
3. Mary has such a beautiful voice that we all like to hear her sing.
4. My friend is so strong that he can lift up the table himself.
5. Bill is so intelligent that he always at the top of his class.
6. The shelf is so high that the boy can't reach it.
7. I have so many problems that I can use all the help you can give me.
8. The house is too expensive for us to buy.
9. The map is too old for me to read.
10. The film is too good for me to miss.
11. The ladder was too short to reach the window.
12. This room is not large enough for us to hold the meeting.
13. The test was not easy enough for us to do.
14. He didn't speak slowly enough for us to hear well.
15. It was not early enough for them to go to the movies.

**BT2:**

1. Both Jim and Karo are on holiday.
2. I like both Tom and Peter.
3. Both his parents and his brothers are going to Ha Long bay next Sunday.
4. Both she and I were really frightened when hearing the noise from the forest.
5. The film is not only boring but also long.
6. Helen lost not only her passport but also her wallet at the airport.
7. The watch is not only the cheapest but also the nicest.
8. George neither smokes nor drinks.
9. Neither Jim nor Carol has got a car.
10. I like neither horror film nor action film.
11. She neither wrote nor phoned.
12. On Friday evening, sometimes I either go to the cinema or stay at home and watch TV.
13. I don't like either watching TV or reading a novel before going to bed.
14. They cannot begin working either on Monday or on Wednesday.
15. My sister didn't either watch TV or listen to music last night.

**BT 3:**

1B	6B	11B	16B	21D	26B
2C	7D	12B	17A	22C	27C
3C	8C	13D	18A	23D	28D
4C	9B	14D	19A	24C	29A
5A	10D	15B	20C	25D	30B

**BT 4:**

1A	4A	7A	10B	13C
2C	5B	8B	11B	14C
3C	6C	9C	12D	15A

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 24: GIỚI TỪ  
(PREPOSITIONS)**

**BT 1:**

1. in	6. from	11. on	16. to – by	21. of	26. to
2. on	7. since	12. to	17. by	22. of - for	27. of
3. at	8. of	13. in	18. for	23. since	28. to
4. about	9. until	14. in	19. on	24. for	29. for
5. at	10. in	15. on - the	20. about	25. in	30. of

**BT2:**

1A	9D	17A	25C	33D
2A	10B	18C	26D	34B
3C	11D	19C	27A	35D
4C	12A	20B	28C	36D
5A	13A	21C	29C	37A
6C	14C	22B	30C	38D
7B	15B	23D	31B	39D
8B	16A	24A	32D	40D

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 25: TÌM LỖI SAI  
(IDENTIFY MISTAKES)**

**BT:**

1. B (he can)	18. B (had)	35. B (who)
2. D (didn't)	19. C (go out)	36. D (shall)
3. D (eating)	20. B (who)	37. B (why)
4. B (the best)	21. B (practicing)	38. C (painted)
5. B (had)	22. B (excited)	39. C (the more fluently)
6. C (what to do)	23. B (hearing)	40. B (a little)
7. A (in spite of)	24. C (most of which)	41. D (honesty)
8. C (hardly know)	25. A (neither)	42. D (attractions)
9. C (where)	26. A (because of)	43. D (with)
10. A (because)	27. A (part)	44. B (close your eyes)
11. B (I liked)	28. A (A)	45. C (used to)
12. D (hasn't)	29. C (is entering)	46. B (had been)
13. A (learning)	30. D (to be cleaned/ cleaning)	47. C (to attend)
14. A (which)	31. D (seriously)	48. C (watching)
15. D (am studying)	32. B (feel like)	49. C (depends on)
16. B (occurs)	33. D (are)	50. C (warm enough)
17. D (in)	34. B (because)	

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 26: TỪ ĐỒNG NGHĨA, TRÁI NGHĨA  
(SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS)**

**BT 1:**

1C	8D	15B	22B	29D
2C	9D	16A	23D	30B
3D	10C	17D	24A	31B
4A	11B	18C	25D	32D
5B	12A	19D	26C	33A
6A	13B	20C	27D	34A
7C	14C	21C	28D	35B

**BT 2:**

1B	8B	15A	22B	29A
2A	9C	16D	23D	30C
3B	10B	17D	24C	31B
4D	11C	18A	25D	32C
5B	12B	19C	26B	33D
6C	13D	20B	27C	34A
7A	14A	21A	28D	35B

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 27:  
CÂU CÓ CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP**

**BT:**

1C	11B	21B	31A	41A
2C	12D	22A	32C	42D
3D	13A	23D	33B	43A
4D	14C	24B	34D	44A
5C	15B	25B	35D	45B
6B	16A	26D	36B	46C
7C	17A	27A	37C	47B
8C	18C	28C	38A	48C
9D	19A	29A	39B	49A
10A	20B	30A	40D	50D

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 28: KĨ NĂNG ĐỌC – HIỂU  
(READING COMPREHENSION)**

**BT 1:**

1A	2D	3C	4C	5A
----	----	----	----	----

**BT 2:**

1A	2C	3B	4A	5A
----	----	----	----	----

**BT 3:**

1D	2A	3B	4C	5A
----	----	----	----	----

**BT 4:**

1C	2A	3D	4D	5B
----	----	----	----	----

**BT 5:**

1C	2B	3A	4A	5B
----	----	----	----	----

**BT 6:**

1A	2C	3B	4D	5C
----	----	----	----	----

**BT 7:**

1C	2B	3A	4D	5B
----	----	----	----	----

**BT 8:**

1A	2C	3D	4C	5D
<b>BT 9:</b>				
1A	2D	3C	4B	5B
<b>BT 10:</b>				
1D	2D	3A	4B	5C
<b>BT 11:</b>				
1C	2D	3C	4B	5A
<b>BT 12:</b>				
1D	2A	3C	4C	5A
<b>BT 13:</b>				
1B	2D	3C	4D	5B
<b>BT 14:</b>				
1C	2D	3A	4B	5B
<b>BT 15:</b>				
1B	2C	3B	4D	5A
<b>BT 16:</b>				
1A	2A	3C	4D	5A
<b>BT 17:</b>				
1C	2B	3D	4D	5B
<b>BT 18:</b>				
1B	2C	3A	4D	5A
<b>BT 19:</b>				
1B	2C	3A	4C	5A
<b>BT 20:</b>				
1D	2A	3C	4B	5D
<b>BT 21:</b>				
1A	2C	3D	4B	5A
<b>BT 22:</b>				
1A	2B	3C	4D	5C
<b>BT 23:</b>				
1D	2B	3A	4B	5B
<b>BT 24:</b>				
1C	2D	3A	4D	5B
<b>BT 25:</b>				
1B	2D	3D	4A	5D

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 29:  
CÂU ĐỒNG NGHĨA**

**BT:**

1D	11C	21A	31B	41A
2C	12D	22B	32B	42A
3B	13A	23A	33D	43D
4B	14D	24A	34B	44B
5A	15D	25B	35B	45D
6D	16A	26B	36C	46A
7D	17B	27A	37B	47A
8A	18C	28A	38D	48B
9B	19C	29D	39C	49C
10C	20A	30B	40B	50B

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 30:  
VIẾT LẠI CÂU VỚI CÁC TỪ CHO SẴN**

**BT:**

1B	11A	21D	31D	41D
2C	12A	22B	32D	42B
3A	13A	23C	33D	43A
4B	14B	24B	34D	44C
5C	15B	25A	35A	45B
6C	16C	26A	36A	46D
7B	17B	27C	37B	47A
8D	18C	28B	38B	48D
9A	19B	29D	39A	49D
10C	20B	30D	40D	50B